



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Educ T 918.41.294

E. C. Dwp.  
m. w. n.

3 2044 097 067 144



Co. Lib

CANCELLED

## ESSEX INSTITUTE.

PRESENTED BY

*Purchase.*

The Library Committee shall divide the books and other articles belonging to the Library into three classes, namely, (a) those which are not to be removed from the building; (b) those which may be taken only by written permission of three members of the committee; (c) those which may circulate under the following rules.

Members shall be entitled to take from the Library two folio or quarto volumes, or four volumes of lesser fold, upon having them recorded, and promising to make good any damage they sustain, while in their possession, and to replace the same if lost, or pay a sum fixed by the Library Committee.

No person shall lend any book belonging to the Institute, excepting to a member, under a penalty of one dollar for each offence.

The Library Committee may allow members to take more than the allotted number of books upon a written application.

No person shall detain any book longer than four weeks from the Library, if notified that the same is wanted by another member, under a penalty of five cents per day, and no volume shall be detained longer than three months at one time under the same penalty.

The Librarian shall have power by order of the Library Committee to call in any volume after it has been retained by a member for ten days.

On or before April fifteenth, all books shall be returned to the Library, and a penalty of five cents per day shall be imposed for each volume detained.

No book shall be allowed to circulate until one month after its receipt.

Received *Dec. 7, 1903.*

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

THE GIFT OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

# **FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN,**

**UPON A NEW PLAN;**

**COMBINING**

**ABSTRACT RULES**

**WITH A**

**PROGRESSIVE SERIES OF PRACTICAL EXERCISES.**

---

**BY C. D. CLEVELAND.**

---

**Improved Stereotype Edition.**

---

**PHILADELPHIA:**  
**MARSHALL, WILLIAMS & BUTLER.**

---

**1841.**

Edue T 918.41.294

HARRY

GEORGE

1861

---

Entered according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1840, by  
CHARLES D. CLEVELAND,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Eastern District of Penn-  
sylvania.

---

# FIRST

## LESSONS IN LATIN.

---

### PRONUNCIATION.

**Q.** How is the Latin language pronounced?

**A.** As it is not known how the Romans pronounced it, each of the modern nations of Europe follows the rules of its own language. The English, therefore, pronounce the Latin according to the principles of the English language.

**Q.** What does the curve mark  $\sim$  and what does the horizontal line  $-$  over the vowels mean?

**A.** The curve mark  $\sim$  over a vowel shows it to be short: the horizontal line  $-$  shows it to be long.

**Q.** How do these marks regulate the pronunciation?

**A.** In words of three syllables or more than three, if the last syllable but one, which is called *the penult*, be long, the accent is upon it, as *amābam*, where the accent is upon the *ā*: but if *the penult* have the short accent over it, the syllable before it, which is called *the antepenult*, is accented, as *hómīnis*, where the accent is on the first syllable.

**Q.** When the *penult* is accented, has its vowel the long or short sound?

A. When the *penult* is accented, its vowel has the long sound when it is followed by one consonant only, or by another vowel, as, *caput, rei, sermōnem*; but when it is followed by two consonants or the double consonant *x*, it has the short sound, as, *frondus, regnum, penna, respondens, buxus*.

Q. When the *antepenult* is accented, how is its vowel sounded?

A. When the *antepenult* is accented, its vowel has, generally, the short sound, as, *tēmpōris, régibus*.\*

#### EXAMPLES TO BE PRONOUNCED AND EXPLAINED BY THE SCHOLAR.

Sermōnis,	Amavērim,	Fuērunt,	Indīces,
Legebamīni,	Capitūbus,	Pennārum,	Donum,
Senectus,	Lapis,	Parentes,	Parentium.†
Bellum,			

#### LETTERS.

Q. How many letters are there in the Latin language

A. Twenty-five, which are the same as those in the English, with the exception of *W*, which the Latins do not use.

Q. How many of these are vowels?

A. Six; *a, e, i, o, u, y*, each of which makes a distinct sound by itself. The other letters are called consonants, which do not make a perfect sound without the aid of a vowel.

#### PARTS OF SPEECH.

Q. How many sorts of words, or *Parts of Speech*, are there in the Latin language?

A. Nine: the *Noun*, the *Adjective*, the *Pronoun*, the *Verb*, the *Participle*, the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Interjection*, and the *Conjunction*.

\* The instructor will explain the few exceptions to this rule.

† The penult *i* of *parentium* is not marked short, because it is a universal rule that 'one vowel before another vowel is short.'

## NOUN.

**Q.** What is a *Noun*?

**A.** A *Noun* is the name of any person, place, or thing. Thus, *boy* is a *Noun*, because it is the name of a person; *school* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a place; and *book* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a thing.

**Q.** How many kinds of nouns are there?

**A.** Two kinds—*proper* nouns, which are the names of persons or places, as, *Cicero*, *Rome*; and *common* nouns, which stand for whole kinds or sorts of things, as, *animal*, *man*, *tree*, *book*.

## GENDER.

**Q.** What is *gender*?

**A.** *Gender* is the distinction of objects with regard to their sex.

**Q.** How many *genders* have nouns?

**A.** Properly speaking there are but two genders: the *masculine*, which is applied to names of men or male beings; and the *feminine*, which is applied to names of women, or female beings. But those nouns which are neither *masculine* nor *feminine*, are called *neuter*; and those which are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense, are called *common*. Therefore there may be said to be four genders: the *masculine*, the *feminine*, the *neuter*, and the *common*.

## NUMBER.

**Q.** What is *number*?

**A.** *Number* is the distinction of objects, whether as one, or more than one.

**Q.** How many *numbers* has a noun?

**A.** Two: the *singular* number, which is used when a sin-



gle thing is spoken of; and the *plural* number, which is used when two things, or more than two things, are spoken of.

#### CASE.

**Q.** What are cases?

**A.** *Cases* are changes which are made upon the endings or terminations of nouns.

**Q.** How many *cases* has a Latin noun?

**A.** Six: the *nominative* case, the *genitive* case, the *dative* case, the *accusative* case, the *vocative* case, and the *ablative* case.

**Q.** What general rules can you give about some cases which are always alike?

**A.** First. The *dative* and *ablative* plural of all nouns in all declensions are alike.

Second. All nouns of the neuter gender have the *accusative* and *vocative* like the *nominative*, in both numbers; and in the plural number, these three cases, the *nominative*, the *accusative*, and the *vocative* always end in *a*.

Third. In all nouns of all declensions and genders, the *nominative* and *vocative* plural are the same.

#### DECLENSION.

**Q.** What is *declension*?

**A.** The *declension* of a noun is the repetition of all its different cases.

**Q.** How many different ways are there of varying or declining nouns?

**A.** Five: which are called the *first* declension, the *second* declension, the *third* declension, the *fourth* declension, and the *fifth* declension.

**Q.** How can you tell one declension from another?

**A.** By the ending of the *genitive* case, singular number. In the *first* declension the *genitive* singular ends in *æ*, in

the *second* declension it ends in *i*, in the *third* declension it ends in *is*, in the *fourth* declension it ends in *ûs*, and in the *fifth* declension it ends in *ei*, as <sup>1</sup> *æ*, <sup>2</sup> *i*, <sup>3</sup> *is*, <sup>4</sup> *ûs*, <sup>5</sup> *ei*.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

**Q.** In what does the *nominative* case of nouns of the first declension end?

**A.** Nouns of the *first* declension end in *a*, in the *nominative*, excepting a few nouns derived from the Greek.

**Q.** What is the gender of the nouns of this declension?

**A.** Feminine gender.

**Q.** How do you distinguish nouns of the first declension?

**A.** By the genitive singular ending in *æ* diphthong.

**Q.** What is a diphthong?

**A.** The union of two vowels so as to make but one sound. The diphthong *æ* is pronounced like *e*.

Decline Penna, *a pen*, feminine gender.

#### *Singular number.*

<i>Nominative,</i>	penna,	<i>a pen,</i>
<i>Genitive,</i>	pennæ,	<i>of a pen,</i>
<i>Dative,</i>	pennæ,	<i>to or for a pen,</i>
<i>Accusative,</i>	pennam,	<i>a pen,</i>
<i>Vocative,</i>	penna,	<i>O pen,</i>
<i>Ablative,</i>	pennâ,	<i>with, from, in, or by a pen.</i>

#### *Plural number.*

<i>Nominative,</i>	pennæ,	<i>pens,</i>
<i>Genitive,</i>	pennârum,	<i>of pens,</i>
<i>Dative,</i>	pennis,	<i>to or for pens,</i>
<i>Accusative,</i>	pennas,	<i>pens,</i>
<i>Vocative,</i>	pennæ,	<i>O pens,</i>
<i>Ablative,</i>	pennis,	<i>with, from, in, or by pens.</i>

**Q.** In how many cases can you find *penna*? What cases are they, and what do they mean?

**Q.** In how many places can you make *penna*? What are they? What their meanings?

**Q.** In how many places can you make *pennis*? Where *pennam*? Where *pennārum*? Where *pennas*?

#### LATIN EXAMPLES TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Aræ,	Horam,	Rosæ,	Terra,
Bestia,	Luna,	Sagittam,	Undas,
Citharārum,	Oris,	Scholīs,	Viārum,
Epistōlis,	Palpēbras,	Speluncæ,	Victimis,
Umbræ,	Satŷram,	Muscas,	Litēris.

#### ENGLISH EXAMPLES TO BE RENDERED INTO LATIN.

a Girl,	in Chains,	of the Table,
O Victim,	of Plants,	with the Lyre,
by Poets,	Battles,	Life,
in the Sand,	to Envy,	by a Fable,
by Slander,	for Wings,	to Punishment.

†

# DECLENSION OF SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS DERIVED FROM THE GREEK.

*Alōē, the aloe, or aloes tree.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Alōe,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Alōes,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Alōē,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Alōen,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Alōe,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Alōe.</i>

*Ænēas, Æneas, the name of a man.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ænēas,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ænēm,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ænēā,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ænēam, or Ænēan,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ænēā,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ænēā.</i>

*In the plural like penna.*

*Anchorisēs, Anchises, the name of a man.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Anchorisēs,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Anchorisēm,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Anchorisē,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Anchorisen,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Anchorisē or Anchorisā,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Anchorisē or Anchorisā</i>

*Penelōpe, Penelope, the name of a woman.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Penelōpe,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Penelōpes,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Penelōpē,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Penelōpen,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Penelōpe,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Penelōpe.</i>

## VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

### Part 1st, Latin and English.

*Ara, an altar.*  
*Bestia, a beast.*  
*Cithāra, a harp.*  
*Epistōla, an epistle, or letter.*  
*Hora, an hour.*  
*Litēra, a letter.*  
*Luna, the moon.*  
*Musca, a fly.*  
*Ora, a coast.*  
*Palpēbra, the eyelid.*  
*Rosa, a rose.*  
*Sagitta, an arrow.*  
*Satūra, a satire.*  
*Schola, a school.*  
*Spelunca, a cave.*  
*Terra, the earth.*  
*Unda, a wave.*  
*Via, a way.*  
*Victima, a victim.*  
*Umbra, a shadow.*

### Part 2d, English and Latin.

*a Battle, pugna.*  
*a Chain, catēna.*  
*Envy, invidia.*  
*a Fable, fabūla.*  
*a Girl, puella.*  
*Life, vita.*  
*a Lyre, lyra.*  
*a Plant, planta.*  
*a Poet, poēta.*  
*Punishment, pēna.*  
*Sand, arēna.*  
*Slander, calumnia.*  
*a Table, tabūla.*  
*a Victim, victima.*  
*a Wing, ala.*

## SECOND DECLENSION.

**Q.** How do you distinguish nouns of the Second Declension?

**A.** By the genitive singular ending in *i*.

**Q.** In what do the *nominatives* singular of all nouns of this declension end?

**A.** They end in *er, ir, ur, us, and um*.

**Q.** Which of these are of the neuter gender?

**A.** Those which end in *um*.

**Q.** Of what gender are the rest?

**A.** The rest of the nouns, which end in *er, ir, ur, and us* are of the masculine gender.

Decline Gener, *a son-in-law*, masculine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	gener,	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	genĕri,	<i>of a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	genĕro,	<i>to or for a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	genĕrum,	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	gener,	<i>O son-in-law,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	genĕro,	<i>with, from, in or by a son-in-law.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	genĕri,	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	generōrum,	<i>of sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	genĕris,	<i>to or for sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	genĕros,	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	genĕri,	<i>O sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	genĕris,	<i>with, from, in or by sons-in-law.</i>

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

Socĕri,	Vir,	Viris,
Furcifĕros,	Presbyterōrum,	Puĕro.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive: thus,

*Ager*, a field, masculine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	ager,	a field,
<i>Gen.</i>	agri,	of a field,
<i>Dat.</i>	agro,	to or for a field,
<i>Acc.</i>	agrum,	a field,
<i>Voc.</i>	ager,	O field,
<i>Abl.</i>	agro,	with, from, in or by a field.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	agri,	fields,
<i>Gen.</i>	agrōrum,	of fields,
<i>Dat.</i>	agris,	to or for fields,
<i>Acc.</i>	agros,	fields,
<i>Voc.</i>	agri,	O fields,
<i>Abl.</i>	agris,	with, from, in or by fields.

LATIN EXAMPLES

Fabrōrum,	Colūbros,	Arbitris,
Magistri,	Ministro,	Aprum,
Alexandro,	Libri,	Auster.

Decline *Domīnus*, a lord, masculine gender.

*Singular number*

<i>Nom.</i>	domīnus,	a lord,
<i>Gen.</i>	domīni,	of a lord,
<i>Dat.</i>	domīno,	to or for a lord,
<i>Acc.</i>	domīnum,	a lord,
<i>Voc.</i>	domīne,	O lord,
<i>Abl.</i>	domīno,	with, from, in or by a lord

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	domīni,	lords,
<i>Gen.</i>	dominōrum,	of lords,
<i>Dat.</i>	domīnis,	to or for lords,
<i>Acc.</i>	domīnos,	lords,
<i>Voc.</i>	domīni,	O lords,
<i>Abl.</i>	domīnis,	with, from, in or by lords.

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

Agni,	Pontus,	Thesaurum,
Rivos,	Nimbos,	Ursōrum,
Ocūlis,	Fluvio,	Muris,
Popūlum,	Philosōphi,	Scopūle.

## ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

Buffaloes,	for a Bushel,	a Hat,
in Sleep,	to a Rock,	from the Arm,
of a Slave,	O Messengers,	with the Oars,
O Master,	of an Oven,	in Autumn.

Decline Regnum, *a kingdom*, neuter gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	regnum,	a kingdom,
<i>Gen.</i>	regni,	of a kingdom,
<i>Dat.</i>	regno,	to or for a kingdom,
<i>Acc.</i>	regnum,	a kingdom,
<i>Voc.</i>	regnum,	O kingdom,
<i>Abl.</i>	regno,	with, from, in or by a kingdom.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	regna,	kingdoms,
<i>Gen.</i>	regnōrum,	of kingdoms,
<i>Dat.</i>	regnis,	to or for kingdoms,
<i>Acc.</i>	regna,	kingdoms,
<i>Voc.</i>	regna,	O kingdoms,
<i>Abl.</i>	regnis,	with, from, in or by kingdoms.

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

Antro,	Imperia,	Vincūla,	Venēnum,
Delūbri,	Labiōrum,	Tecto,	Castra,
Scutum,	Templis,	Sigillum,	Bellōrum.

## ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

for Judgment,	of Slavery,	in Wars,
with a Gift,	the Doors,	for Assistance,
in the Bosom,	O Destruction,	in Chains,
Vices,	of Dreams,	to the Town.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

1. Proper names ending in *ius*, form the vocative, by dropping *us*, as Virgilius, voc. Virgili; Horatius, Horāti. So *filius*, a son, has *fili*.

2. *Deus*, a god, has *deus* in the vocative, and in the plural it has *dii* and *diis* oftener than *dei* and *deis*.

3. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has generally *mi* in the vocative.

+



## VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

*Part 1st, Latin and English.*

Agnus, *a lamb.*  
 Alexander, *Alexander.*  
 Antrum, *a cave.*  
 Aper, *a wild boar.*  
 Arbiter, *a judge.*  
 Auster, *the south wind.*  
 Bellum, *war.*  
 Castrum, *a castle.*  
 Coluber, *a snake.*  
 Delubrum, *a temple.*  
 Faber, *a workman.*  
 Fluvius, *a river.*  
 Furcifer, *a villain.*  
 Imperium, *an empire.*  
 Labium, *a lip.*  
 Liber, *a book.*  
 Magister, *a master.*  
 Minister, *a servant.*  
 Murus, *a wall.*  
 Nimbis, *a cloud.*  
 Oculus, *the eye.*  
 Philosophus, *a philosopher.*  
 Pontus, *the sea.*  
 Populus, *the people.*  
 Presbyter, *an elder.*  
 Puer, *a boy.*  
 Rivus, *a rivulet.*  
 Scopulus, *a rock.*  
 Scutum, *a shield.*  
 Sigillum, *a seal.*  
 Socer, *a father-in-law.*  
 Tectum, *a roof.*

Templum, *a temple.*  
 Thesaurus, *a treasure.*  
 Ursus, *a bear.*  
 Venenum, *poison.*  
 Vinculum, *a chain.*  
 Vir, *a man.*

*Part 2d, English and Latin.*

the Arm, *lacertus.*  
 Assistance, *auxilium.*  
 Autumn, *autumnus.*  
 the Bosom, *gremium.*  
 a Buffalo, *urus.*  
 a Bushel, *modius.*  
 a Chain, *vinculum.*  
 Destruction, *exitium.*  
 a Door, *ostium.*  
 a Dream, *somnium.*  
 a Gift, *donum.*  
 a Hat, *pileus.*  
 Judgment, *judicium.*  
 a Master, *herus.*  
 a Messenger, *nuntius.*  
 an Oar, *remus.*  
 an Oven, *furnus.*  
 a Rock, *scopulus.*  
 a Slave, *servus.*  
 Slavery, *servitium.*  
 Sleep, *somnus.*  
 a Town, *oppidum.*  
 Vice, *vitium.*  
 War, *bellum.*

## THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the Third Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *is*.

NOUNS ENDING IN *O*.

Decline *Sermo*, a speech, masculine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Sermo</i> ,	<i>a speech,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sermōnis</i> ,	<i>of a speech,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sermōni</i> ,	<i>to or for a speech,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sermōnem</i> ,	<i>a speech,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Sermo</i> ,	<i>O speech,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sermōne</i> ,	<i>from, in, by or with a speech.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>speeches,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sermōnum</i> ,	<i>of speeches,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sermōnibus</i> ,	<i>to or for speeches,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>speeches,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>O speeches,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sermonibus</i> ,	<i>from, in, by or with speeches</i>

Q. How is the genitive of *Sermo* formed?

A. By adding *nīs* to the nominative.

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Latrōnes</i> ,	<i>Statiōni</i> ,	<i>Rebelliōnes</i> ,
<i>Bubo</i> ,	<i>Conciōnum</i> ,	<i>Dictionibus</i> ,
<i>Regiōne</i> ,	<i>Pavōnem</i> ,	<i>Lectiōne</i> ,
<i>Opinionibus</i> ,	<i>Seditiōnis</i> ,	<i>Religiōni</i> .

Decline *Arundo*, a reed, feminine gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Arundo,	a reed,
<i>Gen.</i>	Arundinis,	of a reed,
<i>Dat.</i>	Arundini,	to or for a reed,
<i>Acc.</i>	Arundinem,	a reed,
<i>Voc.</i>	Arundo,	O reed,
<i>Abl.</i>	Arundine,	from, by or with a reed.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Arundines,	reeds,
<i>Gen.</i>	Arundinum,	of reeds,
<i>Dat.</i>	Arundinibus,	to or for reeds,
<i>Acc.</i>	Arundines,	reeds,
<i>Voc.</i>	Arundines,	O reeds,
<i>Abl.</i>	Arundinibus,	from, by or with reeds.

**Q.** How is the genitive of *Arundo* formed ?

**A.** By changing *o* into *inis*.

## ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

Swallows,	for Health,	*on Hinges,
in Darkness,	of Virgins,	of a Spade,
with Fear,	Hail,	O Virgin.

NOUNS ENDING IN *A*.

**Q.** Of what gender are all nouns ending in *a*, of the third declension ?

**A.** Of the neuter gender.

**Q.** How do they form the genitive ?

**A.** By adding *tis* to the nominative ; as *dogma*, genitive *dogmātis*.

---

\* The English preposition *on* is rendered by the ablative.

Decline Dogma, *an opinion*, neuter gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Dogma,	<i>an opinion,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Dogmätis,	<i>of an opinion,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Dogmāti,	<i>to or for an opinion,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Dogma,	<i>an opinion,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Dogma,	<i>O opinion,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Dogmäte,	<i>with, from or by an opinion.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Dogmāta,	<i>opinions,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Dogmātum,	<i>of opinions,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Dogmatibus,	<i>to or for opinions,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Dogmāta,	<i>opinions,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Dogmāta,	<i>O opinions,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Dogmatibus,	<i>with, from or by opinions.</i>

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

Poematibus,	Poemāti,	Schemāta,
Diplōma,	Numismätis,	Strategematibus.
Schemäte,	Ænigmätum,	

NOUNS ENDING IN *E*.

**Q.** Of what gender is this class of nouns?

**A.** Nouns which end in *e* are of the neuter gender.

**Q.** How do they form the genitive?

**A.** By changing *e* into *is*, as *Nom. sedile*, *Gen. sedilis*.

Decline Sedile, *a seat*, neuter gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Sedile,	<i>a seat,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Sedilis,	<i>of a seat,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Sedili,	<i>to or for a seat,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Sedile,	<i>a seat,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Sedile,	<i>O seat,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Sedili,	<i>with, from, in or by a seat.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Sedilium,	<i>of seats,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Sedilibus,	<i>to or for seats,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>O seats,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Sedilibus,	<i>with, from, in or by seats.</i>

## ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

O Shield,	with Towels,	Stables,
in a Couch,	of a Room,	in the Sheep-fold.

NOUNS ENDING IN *MEN*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *men*?

A. Of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By changing *en* into *inis*, as *flumen*, *fluminis*

Decline *Flumen*, *a river*, neuter gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Flumen,	<i>a river,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Fluminis,	<i>of a river,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Flumini,	<i>to or for a river,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Flumen,	<i>a river,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Flumen,	<i>O river,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Flumine,	<i>with, from, in or by a river.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Flumina,	<i>rivers,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Fluminum,	<i>of rivers,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Fluminibus,	<i>to or for rivers,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Flumīna,	<i>ivers,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Flumīna,	<i>O rivers,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Fluminībus,	<i>with, from, in or by rivers.</i>

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

Foraminībus,	Lumīni,	Lumīne,
Crimen,	Agmīna,	Ominībus,
Cacumīnis,	Nomīnum,	Carminis.

NOUNS ENDING IN *ER* AND *OR*.

*Q.* Of what gender are nouns, ending in *er* and *or* ?

*A.* Generally masculine, though some are of the neuter gender.

*Q.* How do they form the genitive ?

*A.* By adding *is* to the nominative, as *dolor, dolōris*.

Decline *Dolor, pain*, masculine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Dolor,	<i>pain,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Dolōris,	<i>of pain,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Dolōri,	<i>to or for pain,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Dolōrem,	<i>pain,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Dolor,	<i>O pain,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Dolōre,	<i>with, from or by pain.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Dolōres,	<i>pains,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Dolōrum,	<i>of pains,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Dolorībus,	<i>to or for pains,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Dolōres,	<i>pains,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Dolōres,	<i>O pains,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Dolorībus,	<i>with, from or by pains.</i>

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

Rumōres,	Debitoribus,	Pastoribus,
Pudor,	Sopore,	Aggeris,
Pastoris,	Rumōrum,	Splendore,
Lectorem,	Honori,	Colori.

NOUNS ENDING IN *AS*.

**Q.** Of what gender are these nouns ?

**A.** Feminine gender.

**Q.** How do they form their genitive ?

**A.** By changing *s* into *tis* ; as *ætas*, *ætātis*, *an age*.

Decline *Ætas*, *an age*, feminine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ætas</i> ,	<i>an age</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ætātis</i> ,	<i>of an age</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ætāti</i> ,	<i>to or for an age</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ætātem</i> ,	<i>an age</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ætas</i> ,	<i>O age</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ætāte</i> ,	<i>with, in or by an age</i> .

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ætātes</i> ,	<i>ages</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ætātūm</i> ,	<i>of ages</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ætatibus</i> ,	<i>to or for ages</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ætātes</i> ,	<i>ages</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ætātes</i> ,	<i>O ages</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ætatibus</i> ,	<i>with, in or by ages</i> .

**Q.** How do nouns ending in *as* and *ns* form the genitive plural ?

**A.** They form it regularly in *ium* ; as *ætātes*, *ætatiūm*, *parentes*, *parentiūm*. But generally the *i* is omitted, as *parentes*, *parentūm* : *ætātes*, *ætātūm*.

**Q.** What does the circumflex mark ^ over the *u* mean?

**A.** That the two syllables, *ium*, are contracted into one syllable, *ûm*.

#### ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in the Summer,	for Power,	of the Will,
with Pleasures,	of Truth,	of Pleasures.

#### NOUNS ENDING IN *ES*.

**Q.** How do these nouns form the genitive?

**A.** Commonly by changing *es* into *is*, as *rupes*, *rupis*. but there are very many nouns ending in *es*, that form the genitive differently.

Decline *Rupes*, a *rock*, feminine gender.

##### *Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	a <i>rock</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rupis</i> ,	of a <i>rock</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rupi</i> ,	to or for a <i>rock</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rupem</i> ,	a <i>rock</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	O <i>rock</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rupe</i> ,	with, by or on a <i>rock</i> .

##### *Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	rocks,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rupium</i> ,	of rocks,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rupibus</i> ,	to or for rocks,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	rocks,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Rupes</i> ,	O rocks,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rupibus</i> ,	with, by or on rocks.

#### LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Clade</i> ,	<i>Nubium</i> ,	<i>Famis</i> ,
<i>Struibus</i> ,	<i>Vulpes</i> ,	<i>Palumbem</i> .
<i>Sudi</i> ,		



**Q.** How do some other nouns ending in *es* form the genitive?

**A.** By changing *es* into *itis*, as *ales*, *a bird*, gen. *alitis*, *of a bird*; *miles*, *a soldier*; gen. *militis*, *of a soldier*.

#### NOUNS ENDING IN *IS*.

**Q.** What is the genitive of nouns in *is*?

**A.** The same as the nominative

**Q.** How are they declined?

**A.** Like *rupes*, which has been declined before

Decline *Vitis*, *a vine*, feminine gender.

##### *Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Vitis</i> ,	<i>a vine</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Vitis</i> ,	<i>of a vine</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Viti</i> ,	<i>to or for a vine</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Vitem</i> ,	<i>a vine</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Vitis</i> ,	<i>O vine</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Vite</i> ,	<i>with, from, in or by a vine.</i>

##### *Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Vites</i> ,	<i>vines</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Vitium</i> ,	<i>of vines</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Vitibus</i> ,	<i>to or for vines</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Vites</i> ,	<i>vines</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Vites</i> ,	<i>O vines</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Vitibus</i> ,	<i>with, from, in or by vines.</i>

#### LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Apium</i> ,	<i>Colli</i> ,	<i>Vallis</i> ,
<i>Classibus</i> ,	<i>Ense</i> ,	<i>Unguem</i> ,
<i>Mense</i> ,	<i>Vestium</i> ,	

#### NOUNS ENDING IN *US*.

**Q.** Of what gender are nouns ending in *us*?

**A.** They are generally of the neuter gender.

**Q.** How do they form the genitive ?

**A.** They form it variously. Some change *us* into *ōris*, as *corpus*, *a body*; gen. *corpōris*, *of a body*. Others change *us* into *ēris*, as, *munus*, *a gift*; gen. *munēris*, *of a gift*. And others change *s* into *dis* or *tis*; as *pecus*, *a sheep*; gen. *pecūdis*, *of a sheep*: *servītus*, *slavery*; gen. *servitūtis*, *of slavery*.

Decline *Opus*, *a work*, neuter gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Opus</i> ,	<i>a work</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Opēris</i> ,	<i>of a work</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Opēri</i> ,	<i>to or for a work</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Opus</i> ,	<i>a work</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Opus</i> ,	<i>O work</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Opēre</i> ,	<i>with, from, or by a work</i> .

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Opēra</i> ,	<i>works</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Opērum</i> ,	<i>of works</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Operībus</i> ,	<i>to or for works</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Opēra</i> ,	<i>works</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Opēra</i> ,	<i>O works</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Operībus</i> ,	<i>with, from, or by works</i> .

**LATIN EXAMPLES.**

<i>Munēre</i> ,	<i>Sidēri</i> ,	<i>Onērum</i> ,
<i>Sidus</i> ,	<i>Vulnerībus</i> ,	<i>Scelēra</i> .
<i>Funēris</i> ,	<i>Pondēre</i> ,	

**NOUNS ENDING IN *NS*, *RS*, *PS*, AND *BS*.**

**Q.** How is the genitive of these nouns formed ?

**A.** By changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as *trabs*, *a beam*; gen. *trabis*, *of a beam*; *pars*, *a part*; gen. *partis*, *of a part*.

Decline *Parents, a parent*, common gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Parents,</i>	<i>a parent,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Parentis,</i>	<i>of a parent,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Parenti,</i>	<i>to or for a parent,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Parentem,</i>	<i>a parent,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parents,</i>	<i>O parent,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Parente,</i>	<i>with, from or by a parent.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Parentes,</i>	<i>parents,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Parentūm,</i>	<i>of parents,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Parentībus,</i>	<i>to or for parents,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Parentes,</i>	<i>parents,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parentes,</i>	<i>O parents,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Parentībus,</i>	<i>with, from or by parents.</i>

## LATIN EXAMPLES

<i>Dente,</i>	<i>Fontibus,</i>	<i>Pontis,</i>
<i>Sēpem,</i>	<i>Rudentis,</i>	<i>Fons.</i>
<i>Montium,</i>	<i>Serpenti,</i>	

NOUNS ENDING IN *T*.

*Q.* Is this a large class of nouns ?

*A.* There is but one *simple* noun in *T* in the Latin language, which is of the neuter gender.

## Decline it.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Caput,</i>	<i>a head,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Capītis,</i>	<i>of a head,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Capīti,</i>	<i>to or for a head,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Caput,</i>	<i>a head,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Caput,</i>	<i>O head,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Capīte,</i>	<i>with, from or by a head.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Capīta,	heads,
<i>Gen.</i>	Capitum,	of heads,
<i>Dat.</i>	Capitibus,	to or for heads,
<i>Acc.</i>	Capīta,	heads,
<i>Voc.</i>	Capīta,	O heads,
<i>Abl.</i>	Capitibus,	with, from or by heads.

NOUNS ENDING IN *X*.

**Q.** How is the genitive of these nouns formed ?

**A.** By changing *x* into *cis*, as *lux*, *light*; *gen. lucis*, of *light*.

Decline *Vox*, *the voice*, feminine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Vox,	the voice,
<i>Gen.</i>	Vocis,	of the voice,
<i>Dat.</i>	Voci,	to or for the voice,
<i>Acc.</i>	Vocem,	the voice,
<i>Voc.</i>	Vox,	O voice,
<i>Abl.</i>	Voce,	with, from or by the voice.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Voces,	voices,
<i>Gen.</i>	Vocum,	of voices,
<i>Dat.</i>	Vocibus,	to or for voices,
<i>Acc.</i>	Voces,	voices,
<i>Voc.</i>	Voces,	O voices,
<i>Abl.</i>	Vocibus,	with, from or by voices.

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Pacis</i> ,	<i>Salīci</i> ,	<i>Mercem</i> ,
<i>Cervicem</i> ,	<i>Face</i> ,	<i>Nuces</i> ,
<i>Radicibus</i> ,	<i>Cornicum</i> ,	<i>Radice</i> .

## VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

*Part 1st, Latin and English.*

*Ænigma*, neut. *a riddle.*  
*Agger*, masc. *a rampart.*  
*Agmen*, neut. *an army.*  
*Apis*, fem. *a bee.*  
*Bubo*, masc. *an owl.*  
*Cacūmen*, neut. *the top.*  
*Carmen*, neut. *a song.*  
*Cervix*, fem. *the neck.*  
*Clades*, fem. *a defeat.*  
*Classis*, fem. *a fleet.*  
*Collis*, masc. *a hill.*  
*Color*, masc. *a colour.*  
*Concio*, fem. *an assembly.*  
*Cornix*, fem. *a crow.*  
*Crimen*, neut. *a crime.*  
*Debitor*, masc. *a debtor.*  
*Dens*, masc. *a tooth.*  
*Dictio*, fem. *a word.*  
*Diplōma*, neut. *a charter.*  
*Ensis*, masc. *a sword.*  
*Fames*, fem. *hunger.*  
*Fax*, fem. *a torch.*  
*Fons*, masc. *a well.*  
*Forāmen*, neut. *a hole.*  
*Funus*, neut. *a funeral.*  
*Honor*, masc. *honour.*  
*Latro*, masc. *a robber.*  
*Lectio*, fem. *a lesson.*  
*Lector*, masc. *a reader.*  
*Lumen*, neut. *light.*  
*Mensis*, masc. *a month.*  
*Merx*, fem. *merchandise.*  
*Mons*, masc. *a mountain.*  
*Munus*, neut. *a gift.*  
*Nomen*, neut. *a name.*  
*Nubes*, fem. *a cloud.*  
*Numisma*, neut. *a coin.*

*Nux*, fem. *a nut.*  
*Omen*, neut. *an omen.*  
*Onus*, neut. *a burden.*  
*Opinio*, fem. *an opinion.*  
*Palumbes*, com. *a pigeon.*  
*Pastor*, masc. *a shepherd.*  
*Pavo*, masc. *a peacock.*  
*Pax*, fem. *peace.*  
*Poēma*, neut. *a poem.*  
*Pondus*, neut. *a weight.*  
*Pons*, masc. *a bridge.*  
*Pudor*, masc. *shame.*  
*Radix*, fem. *a root.*  
*Rebellio*, fem. *a rebellion.*  
*Regio*, fem. *a country.*  
*Religio*, fem. *religion.*  
*Rudens*, com. *a cable.*  
*Rumor*, masc. *a report.*  
*Salix*, fem. *a willow.*  
*Scelus*, neut. *a crime.*  
*Schema*, neut. *a scheme.*  
*Seditio*, fem. *a mutiny.*  
*Seps*, fem. *a hedge.*  
*Serpens*, com. *a serpent.*  
*Sidus*, neut. *a star.*  
*Sopor*, masc. *sleep.*  
*Splendor*, masc. *brightness.*  
*Statio*, fem. *a station.*  
*Strategēma*, neut. *an artifice.*  
*Strues*, fem. *a heap.*  
*Sudes*, fem. *a stake.*  
*Unguis*, masc. *a nail.*  
*Vallis*, fem. *a valley.*  
*Vestis*, fem. *a garment.*  
*Vulnus*, neut. *a wound.*  
*Vulpes*, fem. *a fox.*

## VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*Part 2d, English and Latin.*

a Couch, *cubīle*, neut.  
 Darkness, *caſſigo*, fem.  
 Fear, *formīdo*, fem.  
 Hail, *grando*, fem.  
 Health, *valetūdo*, fem.  
 a Hinge, *cardo*, masc.  
 Pleasure, *voluptas*, fem.  
 Power, *potestas*, fem.  
 a Room, *conclūve*, neut.  
 a Sheep-fold, *ovile*, neut.

a Shield, *ancīle*, neut.  
 a Spade, *ligo*, masc.  
 a Stable, *equīle*, neut.  
 Summer, *æſtas*, fem.  
 a Swallow, *hirundo*, fem.  
 a Towel, *mantile*, neut.  
 Truth, *veritas*, fem.  
 a Virgin, *virgo*, fem.  
 Will, *voluntas*, fem.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

Q. In what syllables do the nominatives of nouns of the Fourth Declension end ?

A. In *us* and *u*.

Q. How can you tell a noun of the *fourth* declension ?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *ûs*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *us* ?

A. Masculine gender.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *u* ?

A. Of the neuter gender, and in the singular number they are not declined.

Q. What do you mean by not being declined ?

A. That all the six cases are the same.

Decline *Fructus*, *fruit*, masculine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Fructus,	<i>fruit</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	Fructûs,	<i>of fruit</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	Fructui,	<i>to or for fruit</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	Fructum,	<i>fruit</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	Fructus,	<i>O fruit</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	Fructu,	<i>with, from or by fruit</i> .

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Fructus,	<i>fruits</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	Fructuum,	<i>of fruits</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	Fructibus,	<i>to or for fruits</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	Fructus,	<i>fruits</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	Fructus,	<i>O fruits</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	Fructibus,	<i>with, from or by fruits</i> .

## LATIN EXAMPLES.

Risu,	Venātu,	Gemītus,
Ictibus,	Sumptum,	Eventu,
Fluctui,	Motuum,	Exercītūs.

## ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in a Chariot,	Expenses,	for Gain,
to a Nod,	in Assemblies,	with Groans,
of a Complaint,	Singing,	with Success.

Decline Cornu, *a horn*, neuter gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Cornu,	<i>a horn,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Cornu,	<i>of a horn,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Cornu,	<i>to or for a horn,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Cornu,	<i>a horn,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Cornu,	<i>O horn,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Cornu,	<i>with, by or in a horn.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Cornua,	<i>horns,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Cornuum,	<i>of horns,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Cornībus,	<i>to or for horns,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Cornua,	<i>horns,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Cornua,	<i>O horns,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Cornībus,	<i>with, by or in horns.</i>

Decline Domus, *a house*, feminine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Domus,	<i>a house,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Domūs or domi,	<i>of a house,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Domui or domo,	<i>to or for a house,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Domum,	<i>a house,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Domus,	<i>O house,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Domo,	<i>with, from, in or by a house</i>



*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Domus,	houses,
<i>Gen.</i>	Domōrum or domuum,	of houses,
<i>Dat.</i>	Domībus,	to or for houses,
<i>Acc.</i>	Domos or domus,	houses,
<i>Voc.</i>	Domus,	O houses,
<i>Abl.</i>	Domībus,	with, from, in or by houses.

**Q.** What is there peculiar to Domus ?

**A.** It is both of the *second* and *fourth* declensions ; that is, it is declined like nouns of each of these declensions.

## VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Part 1st, Latin and English.*

Eventus, masc. *an event.*  
 Exercitus, masc. *an army.*  
 Fluctus, masc. *a wave.*  
 Gemitus, masc. *a groan.*  
 Ictus, masc. *a stroke.*  
 Motus, masc. *a motion.*  
 Risus, masc. *laughter.*  
 Sumptus, masc. *expense.*  
 Venatus, masc. *hunting.*

*Part 2d, English and Latin.*

an Assembly, *catus*, masc.  
 a Chariot, *currus*, masc.  
 a Complaint, *questus*, masc.  
 Expense, *sumptus*, masc.  
 Gain, *quæstus*, masc.  
 a Groan, *gemitus*, masc.  
 a Nod, *nutus*, masc.  
 Singing, *cantus*, masc.  
 Success, *successus*, masc.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

**Q.** In what do the nominatives of nouns of the Fifth Declension end ?

**A.** They end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

**Q.** How do you distinguish a noun of this declension ?

**A.** By the genitive singular ending in *ei*.

Decline *Res*, *a thing*, feminine gender.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>a thing,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rēi,</i>	<i>of a thing,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rēi,</i>	<i>to or for a thing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rem,</i>	<i>a thing,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>O thing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Re,</i>	<i>from, with or by a thing.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>things,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rērum,</i>	<i>of things,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rēbus,</i>	<i>to or for things.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>things,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Res,</i>	<i>O things,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rēbus,</i>	<i>with, from or by things.</i>

**Q.** In how many places can you make *res* ? and what places are they ? In how many *rēi* ? in how many *rēbus* ?

## ADJECTIVES.

**Q.** What is an adjective ?

**A.** An adjective is a word which is always joined to some noun, to define or describe it ; as a *good* boy, a *wise* man, a *swift* horse. Here the words *good*, *wise* and *swift* are adjectives, because they give the character of the nouns to which they are joined.

**Q.** Into how many classes may adjectives be divided ?

**A.** Into two classes ; those of the first and second declension, and those of the third declension.

#### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

**Q.** How are adjectives of the first and second declension declined, or varied ?

**A.** The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the *second* declension, as *dominus* ; the feminine is declined like a feminine noun of the *first* declension, as *penna* ; and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, as *regnum*.

#### Decline Bonus, good.

##### *Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Bonus,	bona,	bonum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	boni,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono,	bonæ,	bono,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
<i>Voc.</i>	Bone,	bona,	bonum,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono,	bonâ,	bono.

##### *Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonorum,	bonarum,	bonorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonos,	bonas,	bona,
<i>Voc.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

**Q.** Why are the endings of adjectives changed in this manner ?

**A.** In order to agree with the nouns to which they are joined, in gender, number and case.

Declension of the *masculine* gender of *bonus*, joined to *vir*, 'a man.'

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonus vir,	<i>a good man,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>of a good man,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono viro,	<i>to or for a good man,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum virum,	<i>a good man,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bone vir,	<i>O good man,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono viro,	<i>with a good man.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>good men,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonōrum virōrum,	<i>of good men,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis viris,	<i>to or for good men,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonos viros,	<i>good men,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>O good men,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis viris,	<i>with good men.</i>

Declension of the *feminine* of *bonus*, to agree with *penna*.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Bona penna,	<i>a good pen,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>of a good pen,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>to or for a good pen,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonam pennam,	<i>a good pen,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bona penna,	<i>O good pen,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonâ pennâ,	<i>with a good pen.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>good pens,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonārum pennārum,	<i>of good pens,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis pennis,	<i>to or for good pens,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Bonas pennas,	<i>good pens,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>O good pens,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis pennis.	<i>with good pens,</i>

Declension of the *neuter* gender of *bonus*, in all its cases, to agree with *negotium*, which also is *neuter*.

*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonum negotium,	<i>a good thing,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni negotii,	<i>of a good thing,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono negotio,	<i>to or for a good thing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum negotium,	<i>a good thing,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bonum negotium,	<i>O good thing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono negotio,	<i>with a good thing</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Bona negotia,	<i>good things,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonōrum negotiōrum,	<i>of good things,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis negotiis,	<i>to or for good things,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bona negotia,	<i>good things,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bona negotia,	<i>O good things,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis negotiis,	<i>with good things.</i>

[*Let rule 2d now be committed to memory by the pupil.\**]

Examples of adjectives of the first and second declension agreeing with their substantives. [The vocabulary is at the end of the pronouns.]

Carus amicus,	Propria nomīna,
Formōsa filia,	Divinārum legum,
Pretiōsum aurum,	Superbos pavōnes,
Fidi servi,	Ultimam spem,
Bellæ fœmīnæ,	Caros amicos,
Pretiōso auro,	Fidis servis.
Alexandrum magnum,	

---

\* The pupil cannot fail now to understand the rule, "an adjective agrees with its substantive in *gender, number and case.*"

**Q.** What other adjectives are there of the first and second declension?

**A.** Some of the first and second declension end in *er*.

Declension of *Tener*, *tender*, which belongs to this class.

*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Tener,	teněra,	teněrum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Teněri,*	teněræ,	teněri,
<i>Dat.</i>	Teněro,	teněræ,	teněro,
<i>Acc.</i>	Teněrum,	teněram,	teněrum,
<i>Voc.</i>	Tener,	teněra,	teněrum,
<i>Abl.</i>	Teněro,	teněrâ,	teněro.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Teněri,	teněræ,	teněra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Tenerōrum,	tenerārūm,	tenerōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Teněris,	teněris,	teněris,
<i>Acc.</i>	Teněros,	teněras,	teněra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Teněri,	teněræ,	teněra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Teněris,	teněris,	teněris.

Examples of adjectives declined in the same manner.

Aspěri lapīdis,	Miserōrum homīnum,
Prospěri mercatōres,	Aspěro lapīde.

---

\* The following adjectives of the first and second declension, ending in *us* and *er*, have *i*us in the genitive, and *i* in the dative, and the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

<i>Nom.</i>	Unus,	unna,	unum ;	<i>Gen.</i>	unius ; <sup>1</sup>	<i>Dat.</i>	uni,	one,
	Alius,	alia,	aliud ;		alius ;		alii,	another,
	Nullus,	nulla,	nullum ;		nullius ;		nulli,	none,
	Solus,	sola,	solum ;		solius ;		soli,	alone,
	Totus,	tota,	totum ;		totius ;		toti,	all,
	Ullus,	ulla,	ullum ;		ullius ;		ulli,	any,
	Alter,	altěra,	altěrum ;		alterius ;		altěri,	the other,
	Uter,	utra,	utrum ;		utrius ;		utri,	either.

<sup>1</sup> Genitives in *i*us have the *i* long in prose ; but in poetry it is common.

**Q.** Are all adjectives which end in *er* declined like *tener*?

**A.** They are not; most adjectives in *er*, drop the *e*: as *glaber*, *smooth*.

*Nom.* *glaber*, *glabra*, *glabrum*, and *not*  
*glaber*, *glabēra*, *glabĕrum*.

#### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**Q.** How are adjectives of the *third* declension declined?

**A.** The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the third declension; the feminine is declined in the same manner; and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

*Felix*, *happy*.

#### *Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Felicitis</i> ,	<i>felicitis</i> ,	<i>felicitis</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Felici</i> ,	<i>felici</i> ,	<i>felici</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Felicem</i> ,	<i>felicem</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Felice</i> or } <i>Felici</i> , }	<i>felice</i> or } <i>felici</i> , }	<i>felice</i> or } <i>felici</i> . }

#### *Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Felicitium</i> ,	<i>felicitium</i> ,	<i>felicitium</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> .

**Pauper, poor.***Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
<i>Gen.</i>	Paupĕris,	paupĕris,	paupĕris,
<i>Dat.</i>	Paupĕri,	paupĕri,	paupĕri,
<i>Acc.</i>	Paupĕrem,	paupĕrem,	pauper,
<i>Voc.</i>	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
<i>Abl.</i>	Paupĕre,	paupĕre,	paupĕre.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Paupĕrum,	paupĕrum,	paupĕrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus.

**Prudens, prudent.***Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
<i>Gen.</i>	Prudentis,	prudentis,	prudentis,
<i>Dat.</i>	Prudenti,	prudenti,	prudenti,
<i>Acc.</i>	Prudentem,	prudentem,	prudens,
<i>Voc.</i>	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
<i>Abl.</i>	Prudente or Prudenti,	} <i>in all the genders.</i>	

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Gen.</i>	Prudentium,	prudentium,	prudentium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Voc.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Abl.</i>	Prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus.



**Mitis, meek.***Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mitis,
<i>Dat.</i>	Miti,	miti,	miti,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitem,	mitem,	mite,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
<i>Abl.</i>	Miti,	miti,	miti.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

**Acer or acris, sharp.***Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Acer or acris,	acris,	acre,
<i>Gen.</i>	Acris,	acris,	acris,
<i>Dat.</i>	Acri,	acri,	acri,
<i>Acc.</i>	Acrem,	acrem,	acre,
<i>Voc.</i>	Acer or acris,	acris,	acre,
<i>Abl.</i>	Acri,	acri,	acri.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Acres,	acres,	acria,
<i>Gen.</i>	Acrium,	acrium,	acrium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Acribus,	acribus,	acribus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Acres,	acres,	acria,
<i>Voc.</i>	Acres,	acres,	acria,
<i>Abl.</i>	Acribus,	acribus,	acribus.

In the same manner are declined the following adjectives

Terribile tonitru.	Comi puero.
Sublimes arbore.	Gravium lapidum.
Lævem aquam.	Viridi herbâ.
Omnibus hominibus.	Terrestria animalia.

Duo, two.

*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
<i>Gen.</i>	Duorum,	duarum,	duorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Duobus,	duabus,	duobus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Duos or duo,	duas,	duo,
<i>Voc.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
<i>Abl.</i>	Duobus,	duabus,	duobus.

Tres, three.

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Gen.</i>	Trium,	trium,	trium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Voc.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Abl.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

### DEGREES.

**Q.** How are the different degrees of any quality expressed in Latin?

**A.** By changes made on the terminations of the adjectives.

**Q.** What are these changes called?

**A.** They are called *Degrees of Comparison*.

**Q.** How many *Degrees of Comparison* are there?

**A.** There are three; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

## POSITIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *positive degree*?

A. The *positive degree* is that which does not express any *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, *durus*, *hard*; *latus*, *broad*; *parvus*, *small*.

## COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *comparative degree*?

A. The *comparative degree* is that which expresses some *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, *durior*, *harder*; *lucius*, *broad*; *minor*, *less*.

## SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *superlative degree*?

A. The *superlative degree* is that which expresses the greatest *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, *durissimus*, *hardest*; *latissimus*, *broadest*; *minimus*, *least*.

## FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

Q. How are the degrees formed?

A. The *comparative degree* is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine genders, and *us*, for the neuter gender: as

Nom.	altus,	alta,	altum,
Gen.	alti.		

Here the *genitive* is the first case that ends in *i*; then add *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter: as

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	altior,	altior,	altius.

Q. Is the *genitive* always the first case of the positive that ends in *i*?

A. It is not; sometimes the *dative*; as, nom. *Mitis*; gen. *Mitis*; dat. *Miti*; then add *or* and *us*, which will make *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*.

Mitior, meeker.

*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitiōris,	mitiōris,	mitiōris,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitiōri,	mitiōri,	mitiōri,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitiōrem,	mitiōrem,	mitius,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitiōre or Mitiōri,	} in all the genders.	

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitiorībus,	mitiorībus,	mitiorībus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitiorībus,	mitiorībus,	mitiorībus.

*Q.* How are all adjectives of the *comparative degree* declined?

*A.* Like *mitior*.

*Q.* How is the *superlative degree* formed?

*A.* The *superlative degree* is also formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding to it *ssimus* : as,

<i>Nom.</i>	Altus,	alta,	altum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Alti.		

then add *ssimus*, which makes *altissimus*, highest.

*Q.* Is there any exception to this general rule?

*A.* There is; in all adjectives which end in *er*, the superlative degree is formed from the nominative, by adding *rīmus*; as *pauper*, poor; *pauperrīmus*, poorest.

**Q.** How are all adjectives of the superlative degree declined ?

**A.** Like *Bonus*.

#### EXAMPLES OF REGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>Acūtus sharp,</i>	<i>acutior sharper,</i>	<i>acutissimus sharpest.</i>
<i>Antiquus ancient,</i>	<i>antiquior more ancient,</i>	<i>antiquissimus most ancient.</i>
<i>Durus hard,</i>	<i>durior harder,</i>	<i>durissimus hardest.</i>
<i>Longus long,</i>	<i>longior longer,</i>	<i>longissimus longest.</i>
<i>Asper rough,</i>	<i>asperior rougher,</i>	<i>asperissimus roughest.</i>
<i>Glaber smooth,</i>	<i>glabrior smoother,</i>	<i>glaberrimus smoothest.</i>
<i>Pulcher fair,</i>	<i>pulchrior fairer,</i>	<i>pulcherrimus fairest.</i>

#### EXAMPLES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>Bonus good,</i>	<i>melior better,</i>	<i>optimus best.</i>
<i>Malus bad,</i>	<i>pejor worse,</i>	<i>peissimus worst.</i>
<i>Magnus great,</i>	<i>major greater,</i>	<i>maximus greatest.</i>
<i>Parvus small,</i>	<i>minor less,</i>	<i>minimus least.</i>
<i>Multus (masc.) much,</i>	_____	<i>plurimus most.</i>
<i>Multa (fem.) much,</i>	_____	<i>plurima most.</i>
<i>Multum (neut.) much,</i>	<i>plus more,</i>	<i>plurimum most.</i>
<i>Dives rich,</i>	<i>ditior richer,</i>	<i>ditissimus richest.</i>
<i>Sup̄rus high,</i>	<i>superior higher,</i>	{ <i>sup̄r̄mus or</i> <i>summ̄us highest.</i>
<i>Inf̄rus low,</i>	<i>inferior lower,</i>	<i>inf̄mus or imus lowest.</i>
<i>Citer near,</i>	<i>citerior nearer,</i>	<i>cit̄mus nearest.</i>
<i>Fac̄ilis easy,</i>	<i>fac̄ilior easier,</i>	<i>fac̄ill̄mus easiest.</i>
<i>Vetus old,</i>	<i>veterior older,</i>	<i>veterr̄mus oldest.</i>
_____	<i>Propior nearer,</i>	<i>prox̄mus nearest.</i>
_____	<i>Uterior farther,</i>	<i>ult̄mus farthest.</i>
_____	<i>Prior former,</i>	<i>prim̄us first.</i>
_____	<i>Deterior worse,</i>	<i>detr̄r̄mus worst.</i>
<i>Incl̄ytus famous,</i>	_____	{ <i>incl̄ytiss̄mus most</i> <i>famous.</i>
<i>Sacer sacred,</i>	_____	<i>sacerr̄mus most sacred.</i>
<i>Novus new,</i>	_____	<i>noviss̄mus newest.</i>
<i>Opt̄mus rich,</i>	<i>op̄mior richer</i>	_____

<i>Senex old,</i>	<i>senior older.</i>	_____
<i>Ingens large,</i>	<i>ingentior larger.</i>	_____
<i>Adolescens young,</i>	<i>adolescentior younger.</i>	_____

## PRONOUN.

**Q.** What is a pronoun ?

**A.** A pronoun is a word which stands instead of a noun.

**Q.** Why does it receive this name ?

**A.** Because it is made up of the Latin word *pro*, which means *for*, and *noun* ; as if it were called a *for-noun*.

**Q.** Will you give me an example ?

**A.** Cicero was the greatest orator of Rome : by *his* vigilance and patriotism *he* saved *his* country from ruin.

**Q.** Which are the pronouns in this sentence ?

**A.** *He*, and *his*, which stand for the noun *Cicero*.

**Q.** How many simple pronouns in Latin are there ?

**A.** Eighteen : three substantive pronouns, and fifteen adjective pronouns.

**Q.** What are the substantive pronouns ?

**A.** *Ego*, *tu* and *ui*.

**Q.** Which are the adjective pronouns ?

**A.** *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*, *meus*, *tuus*, *sus*, *noster*, *vester*, *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*.

## SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

*Ego, I.*

*Singular number*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego,</i>	<i>I,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mei,</i>	<i>of me,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi,</i>	<i>to or for me,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	me,	<i>me,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	me,	<i>from, by or with me.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	nos,	<i>we,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrum or nostri,	<i>of us,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	nobis,	<i>to or for us,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	nos,	<i>us,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	nobis,	<i>from, by or with us.</i>

*Tu, thou.**Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	tu,	<i>thou or you,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	tui,	<i>of thee or of you,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	tibi,	<i>to thee or to you,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	te,	<i>thee or you,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	tu,	<i>O thou or O you,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	te,	<i>from, by or with thee or with you.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	vos,	<i>ye or you,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	vestrum or vestri,	<i>of you,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	vobis,	<i>to or for you,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	vos,	<i>you,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	vos,	<i>O ye or you,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	vobis,	<i>from, by or with you.</i>

*Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.**Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	sui,	<i>of himself, of herself, of itself,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi,	<i>to himself, to herself, to itself,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	se,	<i>himself, herself, itself,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	se,	<i>with himself, with herself, with itself.</i>

*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	sui,	<i>of themselves,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi,	<i>to or for themselves,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	se,	<i>themselves,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	se,	<i>from, by or with themselves.</i>

## ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Ille, *he.**Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Ille, <i>he,</i>	illa, <i>she,</i>	illud, <i>it.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	illius,	illius,	illius,
<i>Dat.</i>	illi,	illi,	illi,
<i>Acc.</i>	illum,	illam,	illud,
<i>Voc.</i>	ille,	illa,	illud,
<i>Abl.</i>	illo,	illâ,	illo.

*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	illi,	illæ,	illa,
<i>Gen.</i>	illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	illis,	illis,	illis,
<i>Acc.</i>	illos,	illas,	illa,
<i>Voc.</i>	illi,	illæ,	illa,
<i>Abl.</i>	illis,	illis,	illis.



Hic, *this*.

*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
<i>Gen.</i>	hujus,	hujus,	hujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	huic,	huic,	huic,
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,
<i>Voc.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
<i>Abl.</i>	hoc,	hac,	hoc.

*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>Gen.</i>	horum,	harum,	horum,
<i>Dat.</i>	his,	his,	his,
<i>Acc.</i>	hos,	has,	hæc,
<i>Voc.</i>	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>Abl.</i>	his,	his,	his.

**Q** What do the different genders of *hic* mean ?

**A.** The masculine, *hic*, means *this man* ; the feminine, *hæc*, *this woman* ; the neuter, *hoc*, *this thing*.

Is, ea, id, *he, she, it*.

*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is, <i>he,</i>	ea, <i>she,</i>	id, <i>it.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	ejus, <i>of him or his,</i>	ejus, <i>of her or hers,</i>	ejus, <i>of it or its.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	ei, <i>to him,</i>	ei, <i>to her,</i>	ei, <i>to it.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	eum, <i>him,</i>	eam, <i>her,</i>	id, <i>it.</i>

<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eo, with him,	eā, with her,	eo, with it.

*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ii, they, or those men,	eæ, they, or those women,	ea, those things.
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum, of those men, or their,*	eārum, of those wo- men, or their,	eōrum, of those things.
<i>Dat.</i>	eis or iis, to those men,	eis or iis, to those wo- men,	eis or iis, to those things.
<i>Acc.</i>	eos, them, or those men,	eas, them, or those women,	ea, those things.
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eis or iis, with those men,	eis or iis, with those women,	eis or iis, with those things.

**Q.** What is the meaning of the adjective pronoun *quis*?

**A.** *Quis* means *who*? or *what man*? *quæ* means *who*? or *what woman*? *quod* or *quid* means *what*? *which thing*? or *what thing*?

*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,
<i>Gen.</i>	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	cui,	cui,	cui,

---

\* As, eōrum libri, *their books*, or *the books of those men*: eārum libri, *their books*, or *the books of those women*.

<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod or quid,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	quo,	quâ,	quo.

*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>Gen.</i>	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	queis or quibus, in all the genders.		
<i>Acc.</i>	quos,	quas,	quæ.
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	queis or quibus, in all the genders.		

*Q.* What is the *relative* pronoun?

*A.* Qui, quæ, quod.

*Q.* What is the meaning of it?

*A.* *Who, which, that*; or *vir qui*, the *man who* or *that*; *fœmina quæ*, the *woman who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the *thing which* or *that*.

*Q.* How is it declined?

*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quod,
<i>Gen.</i>	cujus,	ejus,	cujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	cui,	cui,	cui,
<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	quo,	quâ,	quo.

*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>Gen.</i>	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	queis or quibus, in all the genders.		

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quos,</i>	<i>quas,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>queis or quibus, in all the genders.</i>		

**Q.** What other pronouns are there ?

**A.** *Meus*, which means my or mine ; *tuus*, thy or thine ; *suus*, his own, her own, its own ; all which are declined like *bonus, bona, bonum*. There are also two, *noster*, our ; and *vester*, your ; declined like *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*.

#### VOCABULARY.

*Alexander, Alexandri* ; proper noun, 2d declen. masc. *Alexander, the name of the great Macedonian general.*

*Amicus, amici* ; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a friend.*

*Animal, animâlis* ; noun, 3d declen. neut. *an animal.*

*Aqua, aquæ* ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *water.*

*Arbor, arbôris* ; noun, 3d declen. fem. *a tree*

*Asper, aspëra, aspërum* ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *rough.*

*Aurum, auri* ; noun, 2d declen. neut. *gold.*

*Bellus, bella, bellum* ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *handsome.*

*Carus, cara, carum* ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *dear, beloved*

*Comis, comis, come* ; adjec. 3d declen. *mild.*

*Divinus, divina, divinum* ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *divine.*

*Fidus, fida, fidum* ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *faithful.*

*Filia, filiæ* ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *a daughter.*

*Fœmina, fœminæ* ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *a woman.*

*Formôsus, formôsa, formôsum* ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *beautiful.*

*Gravis, gravis, grave* ; adjec. 3d declen. *heavy.*

*Herba, herbæ* ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *grass.*

*Homo, hominis* ; noun, 3d declen. common gen. *a man, one of the human race* ; sometimes applied to woman, and therefore of the common gender, because common to both man and woman.

*Lævis, lævis, læve* ; adjec. 3d declen. *smooth.*

Lapis, lapīdis ; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a stone.*

Lex, legis ; noun, 3d declen. fem. *law.*

Magnus, magna, magnum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *great.*

Mercātor, mercatōris ; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a merchant.*

Miser, misēra, misērum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *miserable.*

Nomen, nomīnis ; noun, 3d declen. neut. *a name.*

Omnis, omnis, omne ; adjec. 3d declen. *all.*

Pavo, pavōnis ; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a peacock.*

Pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *precious.*

Proprius, propria, proprium ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proper, peculiar.*

Prosper, prospēra, prospērum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *prosperous.*

Puer, puēri ; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a boy.*

Servus, servi ; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a servant.*

Spes, spei ; noun, 5th declen. fem. *hope.*

Sublimis, sublimis, sublime ; adjec. 3d declen. *lofty, high.*

Superbus, superba, superbum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proud.*

Terribilis, terribilis, terribile ; adjec. 3d declen. *terrible.*

Terrestis, terrestis, terrestre ; adjec. 3d declen. *terrestrial, earthly.*

Tonitru ; noun, 4th declen. *thunder* ; not declined in the singular number ; nom. plural, *tonitrua.*

Ultimus, ultīma, ultīmum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. superlative degree ; *farthest, last* : it is not used in the positive : the comparative degree is *ulterior, farther.*

Viridis, viridis, virīde ; adjec. 3d declen. *green.*

## OF THE VERB.

**Q.** What is a Verb ?

**A.** A verb is that word in a sentence which declares some person or thing either as *being*, as *acting*, or as *being acted upon*.

**Q.** Give some examples to explain this definition of a verb ?

**A.** When I say *I am*, I speak of my *being*, or my existence ; when I say *I strike*, I speak of my *acting*, for I must strike something ; when I say *I am struck*, I speak of my *being acted upon*, as some person must strike me.

**Q.** Why is it called a *verb* ?

**A.** It is called a *verb*, (from the Latin *verbum*, which means a *word*,) because it is the chief word in every sentence ; and without it no perfect sentence can exist.

**Q.** How many kinds of verbs are there ?

**A.** Three : Active, Passive, and Neuter.

## ACTIVE VERB.

**Q.** What is an active verb ?

**A.** An active verb is that which expresses *action* ; as *amo*, I love : and it always has an object ; for the question would be asked, whom do you love ? and the answer to the question is the object. As, I love *you*, I love *virtue*. In these examples *you* and *virtue* are called the *objects* of the verb.

## PASSIVE VERB.

**Q.** What is a passive verb ?

**A.** A passive verb is that which expresses the receiving of an action ; as, *amor*, I am loved ; which means that I receive the love of another person.

## NEUTER VERB.

**Q.** What is a neuter verb ?

**A.** A neuter verb is that which expresses neither action exerted upon an object, nor the receiving of an action, but only the *being* or *state of things*; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit; *curro*, I run.

**Q.** Is there not *action* expressed in the verb *curro*, I run ?

**A.** There is : but then the action is confined to the person, and does not pass over to an object ; which makes the distinction between an *active* and *neuter* verb.

**Q.** What is the meaning of the word *neuter* ?

**A.** *Neuter* is the Latin word for *neither*. For example, a *neuter* verb or a *neither* verb is that which is *neither* active nor passive : so a *neuter* noun, or a *neither* noun, is one that is *neither* of the masculine nor feminine gender.

**Q.** Do verbs undergo any change ?

**A.** They do ; on account of their voices, modes, tenses, numbers and persons.

## VOICE.

**Q.** How many voices are there ?

**A.** There are *two* voices ; the *active* voice, and the *passive* voice.

**Q.** How do you distinguish the two voices from one another ?

**A.** The *active* voice ends in *o* ; as *amo*, I love ; the *passive* voice ends in *or* ; as *amor*, I am loved.

## MODE.

**Q.** How many modes are there ?

**A.** There are *four* modes : the *indicative* ; the *subjunctive* ; the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

**Q.** What does the *indicative* mode declare ?

A. The *indicative* mode *indicates* or declares a thing positively ; as, *ego amo*, I love, or I do love : or it asks a question ; as *amas tu* ? dost thou love ?

Q. What does the *subjunctive* mode signify ?

A. The *subjunctive* mode signifies *power* or *duty* ; as, *amem*, I may love ; *amavissem*, I should have loved.

Q. What is the use of the *imperative* mode ?

A. The *imperative* mode *commands* or *entreats* ; as, *veni huc*, come hither ; *ama tu*, love thou ; *parce mihi*, spare me.

Q. How is the *infinitive* mode used ?

A. The *infinitive* mode has neither number nor person, but expresses the signification of 'the verb without limit ; as, *amāre*, to love ; *docēre*, to teach ; *legēre*, to read ; *audire*, to hear.

#### TENSE.

Q. How many tenses or times are there ?

A. Five : the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future.

Q. What does the *present* tense signify ?

A. The *present* tense speaketh of a thing *present*, or now doing ; as, *amo* ; I love, or am loving.

Q. What does the *imperfect* tense express ?

A. The *imperfect* tense expresses an action as passing some time ago, but not yet finished ; as, *amābam*, I was loving ; *ædificābat*, he was building.

Q. What does the *perfect* tense express ?

A. The *perfect* tense expresses an action as perfectly completed and finished ; as, *amāvit*, he loved, or has loved ; *docui*, I taught.

Q. What does the *pluperfect* tense express ?

A. The *pluperfect* tense expresses an action as finished before some other action took place ; as, *ædificavēram*, I



had built ; that is, I had built before a certain time ; *amavĕrat*, he had loved.

**Q.** What does the *future* tense express ?

**A.** The *future* tense speaks of a thing that will be done in future, or some time hence ; as, *amābo*, I shall love ; *cœnābo*, I shall sup.

#### NUMBER.

**Q.** How many numbers are there ?

**A.** Two : the *singular* number, which speaks of *one* : the *plural* number, which speaks of *two*, or more than two.

#### PERSON.

**Q.** How many persons are there ?

**A.** Three : the first, second, and third.

**Q.** How do you distinguish the persons ?

**A.** The pronouns, *Ego*, I, and *Nos*, we, are of the *first* person : *Tu*, thou, and *Vos*, you, are of the *second* person : *Ille*, he, and *all other words*, excepting the names of *persons spoken to*, are of the *third* person.

#### CONJUGATION.

**Q.** What do you mean by the conjugation of a verb ?

**A.** The conjugation of a verb is the regular variation and distribution of its several parts, according to its *voices*, *modes*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

**Q.** How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there ?

**A.** Four.

**Q.** How do you distinguish one conjugation from the other ?

**A.** By the termination or ending of the infinitive mode.

In the first conjugation the infinitive ends in *āre* long ; as, *amāre*, to love ; *gubernāre*, to govern.

In the second conjugation the infinitive ends in *ēre* long ; as, *docēre*, to teach ; *exhibēre*, to show.

In the third conjugation the infinitive ends in *ĕre*, short ; as, *legĕre*, to read ; *regĕre*, to govern.

In the fourth conjugation the infinitive ends in *ĭre*, long ; as, *audĭre*, to hear ; *venĭre*, to come.

**Q.** Do all verbs belong to one or the other of these conjugations ?

**A.** They do not : a few verbs are irregular, and cannot be classed with verbs of any conjugation ; such as the verb *sum*, I am.\*

**Q.** Conjugate the irregular verb *Sum* ?

*Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative*

*Sum.*

*esse.*

*fui.*

### INDICATIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego sum,	<i>I am,</i>
	Second person,	Tu es,	<i>Thou art, or you are,</i>
	Third person,	Ille est,	<i>He is ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos sumus,	<i>We are,</i>
	Second person,	Vos estis,	<i>Ye or you are,</i>
	Third person,	Illi sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

#### IMPERFECT TENSE. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego eram,	<i>I was,</i>
	Second person,	Tu eras,	<i>Thou wast, or you were,</i>
	Third person,	Ille erat,	<i>He was ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos erāmus,	<i>We were,</i>
	Second person,	Vos erātis,	<i>Ye or you were,</i>
	Third person,	Illi erant,	<i>They were.</i>

#### PERFECT TENSE. *have been or was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fui,	<i>I have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuit,	<i>He has been ;</i>

---

\* For examples of irregular verbs, see 'Appendix,' at the end of the Syntax.

<b>Plural.</b>	First person,	Nos fuīmus,	<i>We have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuērunt, or fuēre,	} <i>They have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *had been.*

<b>Singular.</b>	First person,	Ego fuēram,	<i>I had been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuērat,	<i>He had been;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	First person,	Nos fuerāmus,	<i>We had been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuērant,	<i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE TENSE. *shall or will.*

<b>Singular.</b>	First person,	Ego ero,	<i>I shall be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu eris,	<i>Thou wilt be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille erit,	<i>He will be ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	First person,	Nos erīmus,	<i>We shall be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos erītis,	<i>Ye or you will be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi erunt,	<i>They will be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<b>Singular.</b>	First person,	Ego sim,	<i>I may be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu sis,	<i>Thou mayest be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille sit,	<i>He may be ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	First person,	Nos simus,	<i>We may be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos sitis,	<i>Ye may be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi sint,	<i>They may be.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would or should.*

<b>Singular.</b>	First person,	Ego essem,	<i>I might be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu esses,	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille esset,	<i>He might be ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	First person,	Nos essemus,	<i>We might be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos essētis,	<i>Ye might be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi essent,	<i>They might be.</i>

PERFECT TENSE. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuërim,	<i>I may have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuëris,	<i>Thou mayest have been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuërit,	<i>He may have been ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuërimus,	<i>We may have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuërint,	<i>They may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuissem,	<i>I might have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuisset,	<i>He might have been ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuissëmus,	<i>We might have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuissëtis,	<i>Ye might have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuissent,	<i>They might have been.</i>

FUTURE TENSE. *shall have or will have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuëro,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuërit,	<i>He will have been ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fueritis,	<i>Ye will have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuërint,	<i>They will have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Second person,	Es Tu or esto Tu,	<i>Be thou or do thou be,</i>
	Third person,	Esto Ille,	<i>Let him be ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Second person,	Este Vos or estôte Vos,	<i>Be ye or be you,</i>
	Third person,	Sunto Illi,	<i>Let them be.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present tense,</i>	Esse,	<i>To be.</i>
<i>Perfect tense,</i>	Fuisse,	<i>To have been.</i>
<i>Future tense,</i>	Esse futûrus,	<i>To be about to be.</i>
	Fuisse futûrus,	<i>To have been about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

*Future, Futûrus, futûra, futûrum, About to be.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

**Q.** How is *amo*, I love, of the First Conjugation, conjugated?

## ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>Amo.</i>	<i>amāre</i>	<i>amāvi.</i>	<i>amātum.</i>

**Q.** How is *amo* declined through all the Modes, Tenses and Numbers?

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love, or am loving.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-o,</i>	<i>I love,</i>
	<i>Am-as,</i>	<i>Thou lovest,</i>
	<i>Am-at,</i>	<i>He loves ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Am-āmus,</i>	<i>We love,</i>
	<i>Am-ātis,</i>	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
	<i>Am-ant,</i>	<i>They love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-ābam,</i>	<i>I was loving,</i>
	<i>Am-ābas,</i>	<i>Thou wast loving,</i>
	<i>Am-ābat,</i>	<i>He was loving ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Am-abāmus,</i>	<i>We were loving,</i>
	<i>Am-abātis,</i>	<i>Ye or you were loving,</i>
	<i>Am-ābant,</i>	<i>They were loving.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-āvi,</i>	<i>I have loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avisti,</i>	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
	<i>Am-āvit,</i>	<i>He has loved ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Am-avimus,</i>	<i>We have loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avistis,</i>	<i>Ye or you have loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avērunt or am-avēre,</i>	<i>They have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-avēram,</i>	<i>I had loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avēras,</i>	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avērat,</i>	<i>He had loved ;</i>

<b>Plural.</b>	Am-averāmus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
	Am-averātis,	<i>Ye or you had loved,</i>
	Am-avērant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

**FUTURE. shall or will.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	Am-ābis,	<i>Thou wilt love,</i>
	Am-ābit,	<i>He will love ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
	Am-abītis,	<i>Ye or you will love,</i>
	Am-ābunt,	<i>They will love.</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**

**PRESENT TENSE. may or can.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
	Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
	Am-et,	<i>He may love ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
	Am-ētis,	<i>Ye or you may love,</i>
	Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

**IMPERFECT. might, could, would or should.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
	Am-āres,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
	Am-āret,	<i>He might love ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
	Am-arētis,	<i>Ye or you might love,</i>
	Am-ārent,	<i>They might love.</i>

**PERFECT. may have.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Am-avērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	Am-avēris,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
	Am-avērit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
	Am-averītis,	<i>Ye or you may have loved,</i>
	Am-avērint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

**PLUPERFECT. might, could, would or should have.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Am-avissem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
	Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
	Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Am-avissēmus, Am-avissētis, Am-avissent,	<i>We might have loved, Ye or you might have loved, They might have loved.</i>
----------------	--	--

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avēro, Am-avēris, Am-avērit,	<i>I shall have loved, Thou wilt have loved, He will have loved ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-averimus, Am-averitis, Am-averint,	<i>We shall have loved, Ye or you will have loved, They will have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Am-a or amāto, 3. Am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love, Let him love ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Am-āte or am-atōte, 3. Am-anto,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love, Let them love.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse amatūrus, -a, um, Fuisse amatūrus, -a, um,	<i>To be about to love. To have been about to love.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	Am-atūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

## GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>To loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Am-ātum,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Am-ātu,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

[Let the pupil now commit to memory the third and the eighteenth rules.]

## EXAMPLES,

In which are introduced verbs of the first conjugation, and in the active voice only. The vocabulary is at the end of the verbs.

Deus creāvit mundum.	Vocavisti servum ?
Colōnus arat arvum.	Vos sperabītis.
Nos clamaverīmus.	Tu laboravēris.
Omnes honorārent bonos viros.	Equi tolērant magna pondēra.
Ille est promulgatūrus rumōres.	Nos invitarēmus. Explorātu.
Vos aedificāte domum.	Specta cælum.
Donātum. Vulnerando.	Canes latrābunt.
Tu propēra.	Ego declarāvi meam sententiam.
Nos parabīmus cœnam.	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf Part.</i>
Amor,	amāri,	amātus.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
	Am-āris or -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
	Am-ātur,	<i>He is loved ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
	Am-amīni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
	Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
	Am-abāris or -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
	Am-abātur,	<i>He was loved ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-abāmur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
	Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye or you were loved,</i>
	Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
	Amātus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
	Amātus est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved ;</i>



*Plural.* Amāti sumus or fuīmus,      *We have been loved,*  
 Amāti estis or fuistis,      *Ye or you have been loved,*  
 Amāti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre, *They have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

*Singular.* Amātus eram or fuēram,      *I had been loved,*  
 Amātus eras or fuēras,      *Thou hadst been loved,*  
 Amātus erat or fuērat,      *He had been loved ;*  
*Plural.* Amāti erāmus or fuerāmus,      *We had been loved,*  
 Amāti erātis or fuerātis,      *Ye or you had been loved,*  
 Amāti erant or fuērant,      *They had been loved*

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

*Singular.* Am-ābor,      *I shall be loved,*  
 Am-abēris or abēre,      *Thou wilt be loved,*  
 Am-abītur,      *He will be loved ;*  
*Plural.* Am-abīmur,      *We shall be loved,*  
 Am-abimīni,      *Ye or you will be loved,*  
 Am-abuntur,      *They will be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can be.*

*Singular.* Am-er,      *I may be loved,*  
 Am-ēris or -ēre,      *Thou mayest be loved,*  
 Am-ētur,      *He may be loved ;*  
*Plural.* Am-ēmur,      *We may be loved,*  
 Am-emīni,      *Ye or you may be loved,*  
 Am-entur,      *They may be loved.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should be.*

*Singular.* Am-ārer,      *I might be loved,*  
 Am-arēris or -arēre,      *Thou mightest be loved,*  
 Am-arētur,      *He might be loved ;*  
*Plural.* Am-arēmur,      *We might be loved,*  
 Am-aremīni,      *Ye or you might be loved,*  
 Am-arentur,      *They might be loved.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

*Singular.* Amātus sim or fuērim,      *I may have been loved,*  
 Amātus sis or fuēris,      *Thou mayest have been loved,*  
 Amātus sit or fuērit,      *He may have been loved ;*

<i>Plur.</i> Amāti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
Amāti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been loved,</i>
Amāti sint or fuerint,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

**PLUPERFECT.** *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been loved,</i>
Amātus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved,</i>
Amātus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti essemus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been loved,</i>
Amāti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been loved,</i>
Amāti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

**FUTURE.** *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
Amātus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been loved,</i>
Amātus fuērit,	<i>He will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
Amāti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been loved,</i>
Amāti fuerint,	<i>They will have been loved.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre or am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Esse or fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Amātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> Am-ātus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

#### EXAMPLES.

Tu cruciabāris.	Ini rogāti fuerint.
Nos comparāmur.	Explorandus.
Nos fugāti essēmus.	Spoliātum iri.

Milites superantur.  
 Illi privabuntur.  
 Vos mitigamini.  
 Ille nominātor.

Ego parātus fuēro.  
 Ego vulnerātus sim.  
 Tu delectēris.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Docēo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum.

### INDICATIVE MODE.

**PRESENT TENSE.** *teach, do teach, or am teaching.*

<i>Singular.</i> Doc-eo,	<i>I teach,</i>
Doc-es,	<i>Thou teachest, or you teach,</i>
Doc-et,	<i>He teaches ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i> Doc-ēmus,	<i>We teach,</i>
Doc-ētis,	<i>Ye or you teach,</i>
Doc-ent,	<i>They teach.</i>

### IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i> Doc-ēbam,	<i>I was teaching,</i>
Doc-ēbas,	<i>Thou wast teaching,</i>
Doc-ēbat,	<i>He was teaching ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i> Doc-ebāmus,	<i>We were teaching,</i>
Doc-ebātis,	<i>Ye or you were teaching,</i>
Doc-ēbant,	<i>They were teaching.</i>

### PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i> Doc-ui,	<i>I have taught,</i>
Doc-uisti,	<i>Thou hast taught,</i>
Doc-uit,	<i>He has taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i> Doc-uīmus,	<i>We have taught,</i>
Doc-uistis,	<i>Ye or you have taught,</i>
Doc-uērunt or doc-uēre,	<i>They have taught.</i>

### PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i> Doc-uēram,	<i>I had taught,</i>
Doc-uēras,	<i>Thou hadst taught,</i>
Doc-uērat,	<i>He had taught ;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uērāmus,	<i>We had taught,</i>
	Doc-uērātis,	<i>Ye or you had taught,</i>
	Doc-uērānt,	<i>They had taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbo,	<i>I shall teach,</i>
	Doc-ēbis,	<i>Thou wilt teach,</i>
	Doc-ēbit,	<i>He will teach ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebīmus,	<i>We shall teach,</i>
	Doc-ebītis,	<i>Ye or you will teach,</i>
	Doc-ēbunt,	<i>They will teach.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-eam,	<i>I may teach,</i>
	Doc-eas,	<i>Thou mayest teach,</i>
	Doc-eat,	<i>He may teach ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-eāmus,	<i>We may teach,</i>
	Doc-eātis,	<i>Ye or you may teach.</i>
	Doc-eant,	<i>They may teach.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ērem,	<i>I might teach,</i>
	Doc-ēres,	<i>Thou mightest teach,</i>
	Doc-ēret,	<i>He might teach ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-erēmus,	<i>We might teach,</i>
	Doc-erētis,	<i>Ye or you might teach,</i>
	Doc-ērent,	<i>They might teach.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uērim,	<i>I may have taught,</i>
	Doc-uēris,	<i>Thou mayest have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērit,	<i>He may have taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uērīmus,	<i>We may have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērītis,	<i>Ye or you may have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērint,	<i>They may have taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uissem,	<i>I might have taught,</i>
	Doc-uisses,	<i>Thou mightest have taught,</i>
	Doc-uisset,	<i>He might have taught ;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-nissémus,	<i>We might have taught,</i>
	Doc-nissétis,	<i>Ye or you might have taught</i>
	Doc-uissent,	<i>They might have taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uéro,	<i>I shall have taught,</i>
	Doc-uëris,	<i>Thou wilt have taught,</i>
	Doc-uërit,	<i>He will have taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uërimus,	<i>We shall have taught,</i>
	Doc-uëritis,	<i>Ye or you will have taught,</i>
	Doc-uërint,	<i>They will have taught.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Doc-e or doc-ëto,	<i>Teach thou,</i>
	3. Doc-ëto,	<i>Let him teach ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Doc-ëte, or doc-etôte,	<i>Teach ye or you,</i>
	3. Doc-ento,	<i>Let them teach.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Doc-ëre,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Doc-uisse,	<i>To have taught.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse doc-tûrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to teach.</i>
	Fuisse doc-tûrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to teach.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Doc-ens,	<i>Teaching.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Doc-tûrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to teach.</i>

## GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Doc-endi,	<i>Of teaching,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Doc-endo,	<i>To or for teaching,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Doc-endo,	<i>With, from, in or by teaching.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Doc-tum,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Doc-tu,	<i>To teach, or to be taught.</i>

[There are so many irregularities in this and the following Conjugations, that before the pupil goes farther, he had better commit the rules for the formation of the tenses, at the end of the Fourth Conjugation.]

## EXAMPLES.

Præceptōres monērunt eōrum discipūlos.	
Nos prohibebimus.	Tu exhiberes.
Servi parerent.	Ille nocitūrus me.
Canes mordēbūnt fures.	Manēbis tu ?
Sol splendet.	Censuisse.
Jusserāmus.	Ego monēbo illum.
Visum.	Vide solem.
Nos flemus.	Ille teneat ejus locum.
Illi manserint.	Flores florent.
Leo terrēbit omnia animalia.	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Docēor,	docēri,	doctus.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular</i>	Doc-eor;	<i>I am taught,</i>
	Doc-ēris or doc-ēre,	<i>Thou art taught,</i>
	Doc-ētur,	<i>He is taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ēmur,	<i>We are taught,</i>
	Doc-emīni,	<i>Ye or you are taught,</i>
	Doc-entur,	<i>They are taught.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbar,	<i>I was taught,</i>
	Doc-ebāris or doc-ebāre,	<i>Thou wast taught,</i>
	Doc-ebātur,	<i>He was taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebāmur,	<i>We were taught,</i>
	Doc-ebamīni,	<i>Ye or you were taught,</i>
	Doc-ebantur,	<i>They were taught.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus sum or fui,	<i>I have been taught,</i>
	Doctus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been taught,</i>
	Doctus est or fuit,	<i>He has been taught ;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Docti sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been taught,</i>
	Docti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been taught,</i>
	Docti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been taught,</i>
	Doctus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been taught,</i>
	Doctus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Docti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been taught,</i>
	Docti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been taught,</i>
	Docti erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbor,	<i>I shall be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebēris or -ebēre,	<i>Thou wilt be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebitur,	<i>He will be taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebimur,	<i>We shall be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebimini,	<i>Ye or you will be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebantur,	<i>They will be taught.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ear,	<i>I may be taught,</i>
	Doc-eāris or doc-eāre,	<i>Thou mayest be taught,</i>
	Doc-eātur,	<i>He may be taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-eāmur,	<i>We may be taught,</i>
	Doc-eamini,	<i>Ye or you may be taught,</i>
	Doc-eantur,	<i>They may be taught.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ērer,	<i>I might be taught,</i>
	Doc-erēris or doc-erēre,	<i>Thou mightest be taught,</i>
	Doc-erētur,	<i>He might be taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-erēmur,	<i>We might be taught,</i>
	Doc-eremini,	<i>Ye or you might be taught,</i>
	Doc-erentur,	<i>They might be taught.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been taught,</i>
	Doctus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been taught,</i>
	Doctus sit or fuērīt,	<i>He may have been taught ;</i>

<i>Plur.</i>	Docti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been taught,</i>
	Docti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been taught,</i>
	Docti sint or fuerint,	<i>They may have been taught.</i>

**PLUPERFECT.** *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Doctus essem or fuissem,	<i>I might have been taught,</i>
	Doctus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been taught,</i>
	Doctus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been taught ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Docti essēmus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been taught,</i>
	Docti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been taught,</i>
	Docti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been taught.</i>

**FUTURE.** *shall have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been taught,</i>
	Doctus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been taught,</i>
	Doctus fuērit,	<i>He will have been taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Docti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been taught,</i>
	Docti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been taught,</i>
	Docti fuerint,	<i>They will have been taught.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Doc-ēre or doc-ētor,	<i>Be thou taught,</i>
	3. Doc-ētor,	<i>Let him be taught ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Doc-emīni,	<i>Be ye taught,</i>
	3. Doc-entor,	<i>Let them be taught.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Doc-ēri,	<i>To be taught.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Esse or fuisse doc-tus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been taught.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Doctum iri,	<i>To be about to be taught.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Doc-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Taught.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Doc-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be taught.</i>

#### EXAMPLES.

Cohibebāmur.	Torti essēmus.
Suasi fuērunt.	Tentus fuēris.
Tortum iri.	Deleamīni.



Delendus.  
Adhibitus sit.  
Jubeantur.

Monemīni.  
Prohibēbor.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Lego,	legere,	lēgi,	lectum.

#### INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read, or am reading.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-o,	<i>I read,</i>
	Leg-is,	<i>Thou readest,</i>
	Leg-it,	<i>He reads ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-imus,	<i>We read,</i>
	Leg-itis,	<i>Ye or you read,</i>
	Leg-unt,	<i>They read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēbam,	<i>I was reading,</i>
	Leg-ēbas,	<i>Thou wast reading,</i>
	Leg-ēbat,	<i>He was reading ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ebāmus,	<i>We were reading,</i>
	Leg-ebātis,	<i>Ye or you were reading,</i>
	Leg-ēbant,	<i>They were reading.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lēg-i,	<i>I have read,</i>
	Lēg-isti,	<i>Thou hast read,</i>
	Lēg-it,	<i>He has read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lēg-imus,	<i>We have read,</i>
	Lēg-istis,	<i>Ye or you have read,</i>
	Lēg-ērunt or leg-ēre,	<i>They have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lēg-eram,	<i>I had read,</i>
	Lēg-eras,	<i>Thou hadst read,</i>
	Lēg-erat,	<i>He had read ;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erāmus,	<i>We had read,</i>
	Leg-erātis,	<i>Ye or you had read,</i>
	Leg-érant,	<i>They had read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-am,	<i>I shall read,</i>
	Leg-es,	<i>Thou wilt read,</i>
	Leg-et,	<i>He will read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ēmus,	<i>We shall read,</i>
	Leg-ētis,	<i>Ye or you will read,</i>
	Leg-ent,	<i>They will read.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-am,	<i>I may read,</i>
	Leg-as,	<i>Thou mayest read,</i>
	Leg-at,	<i>He may read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-āmus,	<i>We may read,</i>
	Leg-ātis,	<i>Ye or you may read,</i>
	Leg-ant,	<i>They may read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ērem,	<i>I might read,</i>
	Leg-ēres,	<i>Thou mightest read,</i>
	Leg-eret,	<i>He might read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erēmus,	<i>We might read,</i>
	Leg-erētis,	<i>Ye or you might read,</i>
	Leg-erent,	<i>They might read.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ērim,	<i>I may have read,</i>
	Leg-ēris,	<i>Thou mayest have read,</i>
	Leg-erit,	<i>He may have read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erīmus,	<i>We may have read,</i>
	Leg-eritis,	<i>Ye or you may have read,</i>
	Leg-erint,	<i>They may have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-isse,	<i>I might have read,</i>
	Leg-isses,	<i>Thou mightest have read,</i>
	Leg-isset,	<i>He might have read ;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-issēmus,	<i>We might have read,</i>
	Leg-issētis,	<i>Ye or you might have read,</i>
	Leg-issent,	<i>They might have read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēro,	<i>I shall have read,</i>
	Leg-ēris,	<i>Thou wilt have read,</i>
	Leg-ērit,	<i>He will have read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erimus,	<i>We shall have read,</i>
	Leg-eritis,	<i>Ye or you will have read,</i>
	Leg-erint,	<i>They will have read.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Lēg-e or leg-ito,	<i>Read thou,</i>
	3. Leg-ito,	<i>Let him read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Leg-ite or leg-itōte,	<i>Read ye, or you,</i>
	3. Leg-unto,	<i>Let them read.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Leg-ēre,	<i>To read.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lēg-isse,	<i>To have read.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse lectūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to read.</i>
	Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to read.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Leg-ens,	<i>Reading.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Lec-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to read.</i>

## GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Leg-endum,	<i>Reading,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Leg-endi,	<i>Of reading,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Leg-endo,	<i>To or for reading,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Leg-endum,	<i>Reading,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Leg-endo,	<i>With, from, in or by reading</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Lec-tum,	<i>To read.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Lec-tu,	<i>To read, or to be read.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

Tempĕrans bibit aquam.	Scripti multas epistōlas.
Semper dice verum.	Omnes legĕrent optĭmos libros.
Non tange me.	Punctum.
Duxissētis.	Surrexĕris.
Liquĕro te.	Lusūrus esse.
Misisse librum.	Solve ejus catēnas.
Puĕri tegĕrent eōrum libros.	Accende lucernam.
Calefecisti tuos pēdes ?	Gessissētis lignum.
Cæsar Romam rexit vincendo Pompeiū.	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Lĕgor.	lĕgi.	lectus.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-or,	<i>I am read,</i>
	Leg-ĕris or -ĕre,	<i>Thou art read,</i>
	Leg-ĭtur,	<i>He is read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ĭmur,	<i>We are read,</i>
	Leg-imĭni,	<i>Ye or you are read,</i>
	Leg-untur,	<i>They are read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ĕbar,	<i>I was read,</i>
	Leg-ebāris or -ebāre,	<i>Thou wast read,</i>
	Leg-ebātur,	<i>He was read ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ebāmur,	<i>We were read,</i>
	Leg-ebamĭni,	<i>Ye or you were read,</i>
	Leg-ebantur,	<i>They were read.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Singular</i>	Lectus sum or fui,	<i>I have been read,</i>
	Lectus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been read,</i>
	Lectus est or fuit,	<i>He has been read ;</i>

<b>Plural.</b>	Lecti sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been read,</i>
	Lecti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been read,</i>
	Lecti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been read.</i>

**PLUPERFECT.    had been.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Lectus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been read,</i>
	Lectus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been read,</i>
	Lectus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been read ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Lecti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been read,</i>
	Lecti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been read,</i>
	Lecti erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been read.</i>

**FUTURE.    shall or will be.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Leg-ar,	<i>I shall be read,</i>
	Leg-ēris or -ēre,	<i>Thou wilt be read,</i>
	Leg-ētur,	<i>He will be read ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Leg-ēmur,	<i>We shall be read,</i>
	Leg-emīni,	<i>Ye or you will be read,</i>
	Leg-entur,	<i>They will be read.</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**

**PRESENT TENSE.    may or can be.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Leg-ar,	<i>I may be read,</i>
	Leg-āris or -āre,	<i>Thou mayest be read,</i>
	Leg-ātur,	<i>He may be read ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Leg-āmur,	<i>We may be read,</i>
	Leg-amīni,	<i>Ye or you may be read,</i>
	Leg-antur,	<i>They may be read.</i>

**IMPERFECT.    might, could, would or should be.**

<b>Singular.</b>	Leg-ērer,	<i>I might be read,</i>
	Leg-erēris or -erēre,	<i>Thou mightest be read,</i>
	Leg-erētur,	<i>He might be read ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Leg-erēmur,	<i>We might be read,</i>
	Leg-eremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be read,</i>
	Leg-erentur,	<i>They might be read.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Lectus sim or fuërim,	<i>I may have been read,</i>
	Lectus sis or fuëris,	<i>Thou mayest have been read,</i>
	Lectus sit or fuërit,	<i>He may have been read ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lecti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been read,</i>
	Lecti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been read,</i>
	Lecti sint or fuërint,	<i>They may have been read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Lectus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been read,</i>
	Lectus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been read,</i>
	Lectus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been read ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lecti essemus or fuissëmus,	<i>We might have been read,</i>
	Lecti essëtis or fuissëtis,	<i>Ye or you might have been read,</i>
	Lecti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Lectus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been read,</i>
	Lectus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been read,</i>
	Lectus fuërit,	<i>He will have been read ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lecti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been read,</i>
	Lecti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been read,</i>
	Lecti fuërint,	<i>They will have been read.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Leg-ëre or ïtor,	<i>Be thou read,</i>
	3. Leg-ïtor,	<i>Let him be read ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Leg-imïni,	<i>Be ye read,</i>
	3. Leg-untor,	<i>Let them be read.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i>	Leg-i,	<i>To be read.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse or fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been read.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Lectum iri,	<i>To be about to be read.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i>	Lectus, -a, -um,	<i>Read.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Legendus, -a, -um,	<i>To be read.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

Vincebantur.	Poneremīni.
Divisi erātis.	Quæsitus sit.
Lædāris.	Gerentur.
Regēre.	Mittuntor.
Tangendus.	Petebamīni.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Audīo.	audire.	audivi.	audītum.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-io,	<i>I hear,</i>
	Aud-is,	<i>Thou hearest,</i>
	Aud-it,	<i>He hears ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-īmus,	<i>We hear,</i>
	Aud-ītis,	<i>Ye or you hear,</i>
	Aud-iunt,	<i>They hear.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iēbam,	<i>I was hearing,</i>
	Aud-iēbas,	<i>Thou wast hearing,</i>
	Aud-iēbat,	<i>He was hearing ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iebāmus,	<i>We were hearing,</i>
	Aud-iebātis,	<i>Ye or you were hearing,</i>
	Aud-iēbant,	<i>They were hearing.</i>

PERFECT *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivi,	<i>I have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivistī,	<i>Thou hast heard,</i>
	Aud-ivīt,	<i>He has heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-ivimus,	<i>We have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivistis,	<i>Ye or you have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivērunt or aud-ivēre,	<i>They have heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivěram,	<i>I had heard,</i>
	Aud-ivěras,	<i>Thou hadst heard,</i>
	Aud-ivěrat,	<i>He had heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iverāmus,	<i>We had heard,</i>
	Aud-iverātis,	<i>Ye or you had heard,</i>
	Aud-ivěrant,	<i>They had heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear,</i>
	Aud-ies,	<i>Thou wilt hear,</i>
	Aud-iet,	<i>He will hear ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iēmus,	<i>We shall hear,</i>
	Aud-iētis,	<i>Ye or you will hear,</i>
	Aud-iant,	<i>They will hear.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear,</i>
	Aud-ias,	<i>Thou mayest hear,</i>
	Aud-iat,	<i>He may hear ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iāmus,	<i>We may hear,</i>
	Aud-iātis,	<i>Ye or you may hear,</i>
	Aud-iant,	<i>They may hear.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear,</i>
	Aud-ires,	<i>Thou mightest hear,</i>
	Aud-iret,	<i>He might hear ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-irēmus,	<i>We might hear,</i>
	Aud-irētis,	<i>Ye or you might hear,</i>
	Aud-irent,	<i>They might hear.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivěrim,	<i>I may have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivěris,	<i>Thou mayest have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivěrit,	<i>He may have heard ;</i>



<b>Plural.</b>	Aud-iverimus,	<i>We may have heard,</i>
	Aud-iveritis,	<i>Ye or you may have heard,</i>
	Aud-iverint,	<i>They may have heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would or should have.*

<b>Singular.</b>	Aud-ivissem,	<i>I might have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivisses,	<i>Thou mightest have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivisset,	<i>He might have heard ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Aud-ivissēmus,	<i>We might have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivissētis	<i>Ye or you might have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivissent,	<i>They might have heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<b>Singular.</b>	Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivēris,	<i>Thou wilt have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivērit,	<i>He will have heard ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	Aud-iverimus,	<i>We shall have heard,</i>
	Aud-iveritis,	<i>Ye or you will have heard,</i>
	Aud-iverint,	<i>They will have heard.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MODE.

<b>Singular.</b>	2. Aud-i or -ito,	<i>Hear thou,</i>
	3. Aud-ito,	<i>Let him hear ;</i>
<b>Plural.</b>	2. Aud-ite or itōte,	<i>Hear ye or you,</i>
	3. Aud-iunto,	<i>Let them hear.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MODE.

<b>Present.</b>	Aud-ire,	<i>To hear.</i>
<b>Perfect.</b>	Aud-ivisse,	<i>To have heard.</i>
<b>Future.</b>	Esse auditūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to hear.</i>
	Fuisse auditūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to hear</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

<b>Present.</b>	Aud-iens,	<i>Hearing.</i>
<b>Future.</b>	Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to hear.</i>

#### GERUNDS.

<b>Nom.</b>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	Aud-iendi,	<i>Of hearing,</i>

<i>Dat.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>To or for hearing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>With, from, in, or by hearing.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Aud-itum,	<i>To hear.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Aud-itu,	<i>To hear, or to be heard.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

Dormiēbam.	Sciēmus illum.
Erudivissēmus puēros.	Servito.
Omnes nutriunto doctŕinam.	Sepelient corpus.
Obedivēras.	Venēro.
Leges punient malos.	Sentiātis.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Audior.	audiri.	audītus.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard,</i>
	Aud-iris or ire,	<i>Thou art heard,</i>
	Aud-itur,	<i>He is heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-imur,	<i>We are heard,</i>
	Aud-imīni,	<i>Ye or you are heard,</i>
	Aud-iuntur,	<i>They are heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard,</i>
	Aud-iebāris or iebāre,	<i>Thou wast heard,</i>
	Aud-iebātur,	<i>He was heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iebāmur,	<i>We were heard,</i>
	Aud-iebamīni,	<i>Ye or you were heard,</i>
	Aud-iebantur,	<i>They were heard.</i>

PERFECT. *have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Auditus sum or fui,	<i>I have been heard,</i>
	Auditus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been heard,</i>
	Auditus est or fuit,	<i>He has been heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Auditi sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been heard,</i>
	Auditi estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been heard,</i>
	Auditisunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Auditus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been heard,</i>
	Auditus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been heard</i>
	Auditus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Auditi erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been heard,</i>
	Auditi erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been heard,</i>
	Auditi erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iar,	<i>I shall be heard,</i>
	Aud-iēris or -iēre,	<i>Thou wilt be heard,</i>
	Aud-iētur,	<i>He will be heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iēmur,	<i>We shall be heard,</i>
	Aud-iemini,	<i>Ye or you will be heard,</i>
	Aud-ientur,	<i>They will be heard.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iar,	<i>I may be heard,</i>
	Aud-iāris or iāre,	<i>Thou mayest be heard,</i>
	Aud-iātur,	<i>He may be heard ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iāmur,	<i>We may be heard,</i>
	Aud-iamini,	<i>Ye or you may be heard,</i>
	Aud-iantur,	<i>They may be heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-irer,	<i>I might be heard,</i>
	Aud-irēris or -irēre,	<i>Thou mightest be heard,</i>
	Aud-irētur,	<i>He might be heard ;</i>

<i>Plur.</i> Aud-irēmur,	<i>We might be heard,</i>
Aud-iremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be heard,</i>
Aud-irentur,	<i>They might be heard.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Auditus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been heard,</i>
Auditus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been heard,</i>
Auditus sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been heard ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Auditi simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been heard,</i>
Auditi sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been heard,</i>
Auditi sint or fuērint,	<i>They may have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Auditus essem or fuissem,	<i>I might have been heard,</i>
Auditus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been heard,</i>
Auditus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been heard ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Auditi essēmus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been heard,</i>
Auditi essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been heard,</i>
Auditi essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Auditus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been heard,</i>
Auditus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been heard,</i>
Auditus fuērit,	<i>He will have been heard ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Auditi fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been heard,</i>
Auditi fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been heard,</i>
Auditi fuērint,	<i>They will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Aud-ire or -itor,	<i>Be thou heard,</i>
3. Aud-itor,	<i>Let him be heard ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Aud-imīni,	<i>Be ye heard,</i>
3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Let them be heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i> Aud-iri,	<i>To be heard.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Esse or fuisse auditus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been heard.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Auditum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect.* Aud-itus,  
*Future.* Aud-iendus,

*Heard.* or *being heard*  
*To be heard.*

## EXAMPLES.

Obediamīni.	Vestirēmur.
Nutriebāris.	Irretiuntur.
Eruditus fuēro.	Vincientur.
Vestiendus.	Nutrītus.
Redimīti sitis.	

## VOCABULARY.\*

Accendo, accendēre, accendi, accensum ; act. *to light up.*  
 Adhibeo, adhibēre, adhibui, adhibītum ; act. *to admit.*  
 Edifico, edificāre, edificāvi, edificātum ; act. *to build, to create.*  
 Animal, animālis ; noun, neut. *an animal.*  
 Aqua, aquæ ; noun, fem. *water.*  
 Aro, arāre, arāvi, arātum ; act. *to plough.*  
 Arvum, arvi ; noun, neut. *the ground.*  
 Bibo, bibēre, bibi, bibītum ; act. *to drink.*  
 Bonus, bona, bonum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *good.*  
 Cælum, cæli ; noun, neut. *the sky, heaven.*  
 Cæsar, Cæsāris ; noun, masc. *Cæsar*, the name of a great Roman general.  
 Calefacio, calefacēre, calefeci, calefactum ; act. *to warm.*  
 Canis, canis ; noun, com. *a dog.*  
 Catēna, catēnæ ; noun, fem. *a chain.*  
 Censeo, censēre, censui, censum ; neut. *to judge*  
 Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātum ; act. *to cry.*  
 Cœna, cœnæ ; noun, fem. *supper.*

---

\* The conjugations of the verbs and the declensions of the nouns are not put down here, as the scholar will know the former by the infinitive, and the latter by the genitive case.

- Cohibeo, cohibēre, cohibui, cohibitum ; act. *to restrain*.  
 Colōnus, colōni ; noun, masc. *a husbandman*.  
 Compāro, comparāre, comparāvi, comparātum ; act. *to compare*.  
 Corpūs, corpōris ; noun, neut. *the body*.  
 Creo, creāre, creāvi, creātum ; act. *to create*.  
 Crucio, cruciāre, cruciāvi, cruciātum ; act. *to torment*.  
 Declāro, declarāre, declarāvi, declarātum ; act. *to declare*.  
 Delecto, delectāre, delectāvi, delectātum ; act. *to delight*.  
 Deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum ; act. *to destroy*.  
 Deus, Dei ; noun, masc. *God*.  
 Dico, dicēre, dixi, dictum ; act. *to say, to speak*.  
 Discipūlus, discipūli ; noun, masc. *a scholar*.  
 Divido, dividēre, divisi, divisum ; act. *to divide*.  
 Doctrīna, doctrīnæ ; noun, fem. *learning*.  
 Domus, domūs and domi ; noun, fem. *a house*. See page 27.  
 Dono, donāre, donāvi, donātum ; act. *to present, to give*.  
 Dormio, dormīre, dormīvi, dormitum ; neut. *to sleep*.  
 Duceo, ducēre, duxi, ductum ; act. *to lead*.  
 Ejus, *his*, gen. sing. of *is, ea, id*.  
 Eōrum, *their*, gen. plur. of *is, ea, id*.  
 Epistōla, epistōlæ ; noun, fem. *a letter*.  
 Equus, equi ; noun, masc. *a horse*.  
 Erudio, erudire, erudivi, eruditum ; act. *to instruct*.  
 Exhibeo, exhibēre, exhibui, exhibitum ; act. *to show, to exhibit*.  
 Explōro, explorāre, explorāvi, explorātum ; act. *to search*.  
 Fleo, flēre, flevi, fletum ; neut. *to weep*.  
 Floreo, florēre, florui ; (no supine,) neut. *to flourish, to blossom*.  
 Flos, flōris ; noun, masc. *a flower*.  
 Fugo, fugāre, fugāvi, fugātum ; act. *to rout, or put to flight*.  
 Fur, furis ; noun, com. *a thief, a robber*.  
 Gero, gerēre, gessi, gestum ; act. *to carry*.  
 Honōro, honorāre, honorāvi, honorātum ; act. *to honor*.  
 Invito, invitāre, invitāvi, invitātum ; act. *to invite*.  
 Irretio, irretire, irretivi, irretitum ; act. *to ensnare*.  
 Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum ; act. *to order*.  
 Labōro, laborāre, laborāvi, laborātum ; act. and neut. *to labour*.  
 Lædo, lædēre, læsi, læsum ; act. *to hurt*.  
 Latro, latrāre, latrāvi, latrātum ; neut. *to bark*.

- Lego, legēre, legi, lectum ; act. *to read*.  
 Leo, leōnis ; noun, masc. *a lion*.  
 Lex, legis ; noun, fem. *a law*.  
 Liber, libri ; noun, masc. *a book*.  
 Lignum, ligni ; noun, neut. *wood*.  
 Linquo, linquēre, liqui ; (no supine,) act. *to leave*.  
 Locus, loci ; noun, masc. *a place*. In the plural it is both masc. and neut. making *loci* and *loca* in the nom.  
 Lucerna, lucernæ ; noun, fem. *a lamp, a candle*.  
 Ludo, ludēre, lusi, lusum ; neut. *to play*.  
 Magnus, magna, magnum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *great*.  
 Malus, mala, malum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *bad*.  
 Mali, malōrum ; as a noun, *bad men*.  
 Maneo, manēre, mansi, mansum ; neut. *to remain*.  
 Meus, mea, meum ; adj. pro. *my*.  
 Miles, militis ; noun, com. *a soldier*.  
 Mitigo, mitigāre, mitigāvi, mitigātum ; act. *to pacify*.  
 Mitto, mittēre, misi, missum ; act. *to send*.  
 Moneo, monēre, monui, monitum ; act. *to admonish*.  
 Mordeo, mordēre, memordi, morsum ; act. *to bite*.  
 Multus, multa, multum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *much, many*.  
 Mundus, mundi ; noun, masc. *the world*.  
 Noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocitum ; act. *to hurt*.  
 Nomino, nomināre, nomināvi, nominātum ; act. *to name*.  
 Non ; adverb, *not*.  
 Nutrio, nutrire, nutrivi, nutritum ; act. *to nourish, to cherish, to foster*.  
 Obedio, obedire, obediui, obeditum ; neut. *to obey*.  
 Omnis, omnis, omne ; adj. 3d declen. *all, every*.  
 Optimus, optima, optimum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *the best*. It is the superlative degree of *bonus*, which see on page 40.  
 Pareo, parēre, parui, paritum ; neut. *to obey*.  
 Paro, parāre, parāvi, parātum ; act. *to prepare*.  
 Pes, pedis ; noun, masc. *the foot*.  
 Peto, petēre, petivi, petitum ; act. *to seek*.  
 Pompeius, Pompeii ; noun, masc. *Pompey, a distinguished Roman*.  
 Pondus, pondēris ; noun, neut. *a load, a weight*.  
 Pono, ponēre, posui, positum ; act. *to place, to put*.  
 Porto, portāre, portāvi, portātum ; act. *to carry*.

- Præceptor, præceptōis ; noun, masc. an instructor.**  
**Privo, privāre, privāvi, privātum ; act. to deprive.**  
**Prohibeo, prohibēre, prohibui, prohibitum ; act. to hinder, to prohibit.**  
**Promulgo, promulgāre, promulgāvi, promulgātum ; act. to publish.**  
**Propĕro, properāre, properāvi, properātum ; act. and neut. to hasten.**  
**Puer, puĕri ; noun, masc. a boy.**  
**Pungo, pungĕre, pupūgi, punctum ; act. to prick.**  
**Panio, panīre, punīvi, punitum ; act. to punish.**  
**Quæro, quærĕre, quæsivi, quæsītum ; act. to seek.**  
**Redimio, redimīre, redimīvi, redimītum ; act. to bind.**  
**Rego, regĕre, rexi, rectum ; act. to rule, to govern.**  
**Rogo, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātum ; act. to ask.**  
**Roma, Romæ ; noun, fem. Rome, the capital of Italy.**  
**Rumor, rumōris ; noun, masc. a rumor ; in the plural, news.**  
**Scio, scīre, scīvi, scītum ; act. to know.**  
**Scribo, scribĕre, scripsi, scriptum ; act. to write.**  
**Semper ; adverb, always.**  
**Sententia, sententiæ ; noun, fem. an opinion.**  
**Sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum ; act. to feel.**  
**Sepelio, sepelīre, sepelīvi, sepultum ; act. to bury.**  
**Servio, servire, servivi, servītum ; act. to serve, to obey.**  
**Servus, servi ; noun, masc. a servant.**  
**Sol, solis ; noun, masc. the sun.**  
**Solvo, solvĕre, solvi, solūtum ; act. to loose.**  
**Specto, spectāre, spectāvi, spectātum ; act. to behold, look at.**  
**Spero, sperāre, sperāvi, sperātum ; act. to hope.**  
**Splendo, splendĕre, splendui ; (no supine ;) neut. to shine.**  
**Spolio, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum ; act. to rob.**  
**Suadeo, suadĕre, suāsi, suāsūm ; act. to advise.**  
**Supĕro, superāre, superāvi, superātum, act. to conquer.**  
**Surgo, surgĕre, surrexi, surrectum ; neut. generally, but sometimes  
act. to rise.**  
**Tango, tangĕre, tetīgi, tactum ; act. to touch.**  
**Tego, tegĕre, texi, tectum ; act. to cover.**  
**Tempĕrans, tempĕrans, tempĕrans ; adj. 3d declen. temperate. When  
it is not joined to any noun, it means a temperate man, or woman.**  
**Teneo, tenĕre, tenūi, tentum ; act. to hold, to keep.**  
**Terreo, terrĕre, terrui, terrītum ; act. to frighten.**  
**Tolĕro, tolerāre, tolerāvi, tolerātum ; act. to bear.**



Torqueo, torquēre, torsi, tortum ; act. *to twist, to twirl.*

Tuus, tua, tuum ; adj. pronoun, *thy, your.*

Venio, venīre, vēni, ventum ; neut. *to come.*

Verum, veri ; noun, neut. *the truth.*

Vestio, vestire, vestivi, vestitum ; act. *to clothe.*

Video, vidēre, vidi, visum ; act. *to see.*

Vincio, vincire, vinxi, victum ; act. *to bind.*

Vinco, vincēre, vici, victum ; act. *to overcome, to conquer.*

Voco, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum ; act. *to call.*

Vulnĕro, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum ; act. *to wound.*

#### FORMATION OF VERBS.

**Q.** How many principal parts of a verb are there from which all the others are formed ?

**A.** Four.

**Q.** What are they ?

**A.** They are *O*, the ending of the *present* tense ; *I*, the ending of the *perfect* tense ; *RE*, the ending of the *infinitive* mode ; and *UM*, the ending of the *supine*.

**Q.** When is a verb said to be *conjugated* ?

**A.** When all these four parts are mentioned, because from these all the rest are derived.

**Q.** What is called the *Theme*, or *Root* of the verb ?

**A.** The first person singular, of the indicative mode, present tense ; because from this the other three parts are formed.

#### FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

##### *Indicative Mode.*

**Q.** How is the *Imperfect* tense formed ?

**A.** The *Imperfect indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam* ; as, *am-o*, *am-ābam* :—in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into

*bam* ; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bam* :—in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ēbam* ; as *leg-o*, *leg-ēbam* ; *audi-o*, *audi-ēbam*.

**Q.** How is the *Pluperfect* tense of the Indicative formed ?

**A.** The *Pluperfect indicative* is formed from the *perfect* in all the conjugations by changing *i* into *eram* ; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-eram* ; *docu-i*, *docu-eram* ; *leg-i*, *leg-eram* ; *audīv-i*, *audiv-eram*.

**Q.** How is the *Future* tense formed ?

**A.** The *Future indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo* ; as, *am-o*, *am-ābo* ; in the second conjugation by changing *o* into *bo* ; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bo* ; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am* ; as, *leg-o*, *leg-am* ; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

#### *Subjunctive Mode.*

**Q.** How is the *Present* tense, Subjunctive, formed ?

**A.** The *Present subjunctive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em* ; as, *am-o*, *am-em* ; in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am* ; as, *doce-o*, *doce-am* ; *leg-o*, *leg-am* ; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

**Q.** How is the *Imperfect* tense formed ?

**A.** The *Imperfect subjunctive* is formed, in all the conjugations, from the present infinitive, by adding *m* ; as, *amāre*, *amārem* ; *docēre*, *docērem* ; *legēre*, *legērem* ; *audire*, *audirem*.

**Q.** How is the *Perfect* formed ?

**A.** The *Perfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *erim* ; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-erim* ; *docu-i*, *docu-erim* ; *leg-i*, *leg-erim* ; *audīv-i*, *audiv-erim*.

**Q.** How is the *Pluperfect* formed ?

**A.** The *Pluperfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *issem* ; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-*

*issem ; docu-i, docu-issem ; leg-i, leg-issem ; audīv-i, audiv-issem.*

**Q.** How is the *Future* tense formed ?

**A.** The *Future subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ěro* ; as, *amāv-i, amav-ěro ; docu-i, docu-ěro ; leg-i, leg-ěro, audīv-i, audiv-ěro.*

#### *Imperative Mode.*

**Q.** How is the *Imperative* mode formed ?

**A.** The *Present imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re* ; as, *amāre, ama ; docēre, doce ; legěre, lege ; audī-re, audi.*

#### *Infinitive Mode.*

**Q.** How is the *Present infinitive* formed ?

**A.** The *Present infinitive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *āre* ; as, *am-o, am-āre* ; in the second and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *re* ; as, *doce-o, docē-re ; audi-o, audī-re* ; in the third conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *ěre* ; as, *leg-o, leg-ěre ; cap-io, cap-ěre.*

**Q.** How is the *Perfect* formed ?

**A.** The *Perfect infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse* ; as, *amāv-i amav-isse ; docu-i, docu-isse ; leg-i, leg-isse ; audīv-i, audiv-isse.*

**Q.** How is the *Future* formed ?

**A.** The *Future infinitive* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*, and adding *esse*, or *fuisse* ; as, *amātu-m, amatū-rus, esse* or *fuisse* ; *doctu-m, doctū-rus, esse* or *fuisse* ; *lectu-m, lectū-rus, esse* or *fuisse* ; *auditū-m, auditū-rus, esse* or *fuisse.*

#### *Participles.*

**Q.** How is the *Present Participle* formed ?

**A.** The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ans* ;

as, *am-o*, *am-ans* ; in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *ns* ; as, *doce-o*, *doce-ns* ; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ens* ; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ens* ; *audi-o*, *audi-ens*.

**Q.** How is the *Future Participle* formed ?

**A.** The *Future Participle* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus* ; as, *amātu-m*, *amatū-rus* ; *doctu-m*, *doctū-rus* ; *lectu-m*, *lectū-rus* ; *auditu-m*, *auditū-rus*.

### *Gerunds.*

**Q.** How are the *Gerunds* formed ?

**A.** The *Gerunds* are formed from the present participle, by changing *s* into *dum*, *di*, and *do* ; as,

<i>aman-s</i> ;	<i>aman-dum</i> ,	<i>aman-di</i> ,	<i>aman-do</i> ;
<i>docen-s</i> ;	<i>docen-dum</i> ,	<i>docen-di</i> ,	<i>docen-do</i> ;
<i>legen-s</i> ;	<i>legen-dum</i> ,	<i>legen-di</i> ,	<i>legen-do</i> ;
<i>audien-s</i> ;	<i>audien-dum</i> ,	<i>audien-di</i> ,	<i>audien-do</i> .

### FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

#### *Indicative and Subjunctive Modes.*

**Q.** What five tenses in these modes are formed from the same tenses in the active voice ?

**A.** The *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future Indicative* ; and the *Present*, and *Imperfect Subjunctive*, are formed from the corresponding tenses in the active voice.

**Q.** How are they formed ?

**A.** From those tenses in the active voice which end in *o*, the same tenses in the passive are formed by adding *r* ; but from those which, in the active voice, end in *m*, the same tenses of the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r*.

**Q.** Can you give me some examples ?

*First Conjugation. Second Conjugation. Third Conjugation.*

	<i>Active. Passive.</i>		<i>Active. Passive.</i>		<i>Active. Passive.</i>	
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	amo,	amor.	doceo,	doceor.	lego,	legor.
<i>Imp. Indic.</i>	amābam,	amābar.	docēbam,	docēbar.	legēbam,	legēbar.
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	amābo,	amābor.	docēbo,	docēbor.	legam,	legar.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	amem,	amer.	doceam,	docear.	legam,	legar.
<i>Imp. Subj.</i>	amārem,	amārer.	docērem,	docērer.	legērem,	legērer.

**Q.** How are the other five tenses formed ?

**A.** The other five tenses, namely, the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Indicative*; and the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle, declined with the tenses of the verb *Sum*.\*

*Imperative Mode.*

**Q.** How is the *Imperative* mode formed ?

**A.** The *Imperative Passive* is the same as the *Infinitive Active*.

*Infinitive Mode.*

**Q.** How is the *Present Infinitive* formed ?

**A.** The *Present* tense of the *Infinitive* mode is formed from the *Infinitive Active*, by changing *e*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i*; as, *amār-e*, *amār-i*; *docēr-e*, *docēr-i*; *audīr-e*, *audīr-i*; and in the third conjugation, by changing *ēre* into *i*; as, *leg-ēre*, *leg-i*.

**Q.** How is the *Future Infinitive* formed ?

**A.** The *Future Infinitive* is composed of the former supine, and *iri*, (which is the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go,) as, *amātum iri*; *doctum iri*; *lectum iri*.

---

\* Let reference be made to the verbs.

*Participles.*

**Q.** How is the *Perfect Participle* formed?

**A.** The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amātu-m*, *amātu-s*; *doctu-m*, *doctu-s*; *lectu-m*, *lectu-s*; *audītu-m*, *audītu-s*.

**Q.** How is the *Future Participle* formed?

**A.** The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active participle, by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *amans*, *amandus*; *docens*, *docendus*; *legens*, *legendus*; *audiens*, *audiendus*.

## A PARADIGM \*

*Of the Tenses of the Active Voice of the Four Conjugations according to the preceding Formation.*

1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	Names of the Tenses.
<i>From</i> AMO, <i>are formed</i> Amābam,	<i>From</i> MONEO, <i>are formed</i> monēbam,	<i>From</i> REGO, <i>are formed</i> regēbam,	<i>From</i> AUDIO, <i>are formed</i> audiēbam,	<i>Present Indicative. -</i>  <i>Imperfect Indicative.</i>
Amābo,	monēbo,	regam,	audiam,	<i>Future Indicative.</i>
Amem,	moneam,	regam,	audiam,	<i>Present Subjunctive.</i>
Amans,	monens,	regens,	audiens,	<i>Present Participle</i>
Amāndum,	monendum,	regendum,	audiendum,	} <i>Gerunds.</i>
Amāndi,	monendi,	regendi,	audiendi,	
Amāndo, &c.	monendo, &c.	regendo, &c.	audiendo, &c.	

\* *Paradigm means an exhibition, or model.*

<i>From</i>	<i>From</i>	<i>From</i>	<i>From</i>	
<b>AMARE,</b> <i>are formed</i>	<b>MONĒRE,</b> <i>are formed</i>	<b>REGĒRE,</b> <i>are formed</i>	<b>AUDĪRE,</b> <i>are formed</i>	<i>Present Infinitive.</i>
Ama,	mone,	rege,	audi,	<i>Imperative.</i>
Amārem,	monērem,	regērem,	audirem,	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>
<b>AMAVI,</b>	<b>MONUI,</b>	<b>REXI,</b>	<b>AUDĪVI.</b>	<i>Perfect Indicative.</i>
Amavēram,	monuēram,	rexēram,	audivēram,	<i>Pluperfect Indicative.</i>
Amavērim,	monuērim,	rexērim,	audivērim,	<i>Perfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavissem,	monuissem,	rexissem,	audivissem,	<i>Pluperfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavēro,	monuēro,	rexēro,	audivēro,	<i>Future Subjunctive.</i>
Amavisse,	monuisse,	rexisse,	audivisse.	<i>Perfect Infinitive.</i>
<b>AMATUM,</b>	<b>MONŪTUM,</b>	<b>RECTUM,</b>	<b>AUDĪTUM,</b>	<i>Former Supine.</i>
Amātu,	monītu,	rectu,	audītu,	<i>Latter Supine.</i>
Amatūrus,	monitūrus,	rectūrus,	auditūrus.	<i>Future Participle.</i>



## DEPONENT VERBS.

**Q.** What is a *Deponent* verb?

**A.** A *Deponent* verb is a verb which has a passive form, but an active signification.

**Q.** Why is a verb called *Deponent*?

**A.** It is so called because it has *laid aside*, or *put off* its active voice and passive sense: from two Latin words, *pono*, which means *to put* or *place* and *de*, *off*, or *from*.

**Q.** How many participles has a deponent verb?

**A.** Four: two of which, namely, the *present* and one of the *futures*, are of the active form.

Conjugation of the *Deponent* verb *Lætor*, *I rejoice*, of the first conjugation.

<i>Present Indicative,</i>	<i>Present Infinitive,</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Lætor,	Lætāri,	Lætātus sum.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætor,	<i>I rejoice,</i>
	Lætāris or Lætāre,	<i>Thou rejoicest,</i>
	Lætātur,	<i>He rejoices ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāmur,	<i>We rejoice,</i>
	Lætāmīni,	<i>Ye or you rejoice,</i>
	Lætantur,	<i>They rejoice.</i>

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætābar,	<i>I rejoiced,</i>
	Lætābāris or Lætābāre,	<i>Thou rejoicest,</i>
	Lætābātur,	<i>He rejoiced ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætābāmur,	<i>We rejoiced,</i>
	Lætābamīni,	<i>Ye or you rejoiced,</i>
	Lætābantur,	<i>They rejoiced.</i>

## PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus sum,	<i>I have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus es,	<i>Thou hast rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus est,	<i>He has rejoiced ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti sumus,	<i>We have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti estis,	<i>Ye or you have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti sunt,	<i>They have rejoiced.</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus eram,	<i>I had rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus eras,	<i>Thou hadst rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus erat,	<i>He had rejoiced ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti erāmus,	<i>We had rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti erātis,	<i>Ye or you had rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti erant,	<i>They had rejoiced.</i>

## FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætābor,	<i>I shall rejoice,</i>
	Lætābēris or lætabēre,	<i>Thou wilt rejoice,</i>
	Lætābĭtur,	<i>He will rejoice ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætābĭmur,	<i>We shall rejoice,</i>
	Lætābĭmĭni,	<i>Ye or you will rejoice,</i>
	Lætābuntur,	<i>They will rejoice.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætēr,	<i>I may rejoice,</i>
	Lætēris or lætēre,	<i>Thou mayest rejoice,</i>
	Lætētur,	<i>He may rejoice ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætēmur,	<i>We may rejoice,</i>
	Lætēmĭni,	<i>Ye or you may rejoice,</i>
	Lætentur,	<i>They may rejoice,</i>

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætārer,	<i>I might rejoice,</i>
	Lætārēris or lætarēre,	<i>Thou mightest rejoice,</i>
	Lætārētur,	<i>He might rejoice ;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Lætaremur,	<i>We might rejoice,</i>
	Lætaremini,	<i>Ye or you might rejoice,</i>
	Lætarentur,	<i>They might rejoice.</i>

## PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus sim,	<i>I may have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus sis,	<i>Thou mayest have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus sit,	<i>He may have rejoiced ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti simus,	<i>We may have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti sitis,	<i>Ye or you may have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti sint,	<i>They may have rejoiced.</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus essem,	<i>I might have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus esses,	<i>Thou mightest have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus esset,	<i>He might have rejoiced ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti essemus,	<i>We might have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti essētis,	<i>Ye or you might have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti essent,	<i>They might have rejoiced.</i>

## FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus fuëro,	<i>I shall have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus fuërit,	<i>He will have rejoiced ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti fuërint,	<i>They will have rejoiced.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Lætäre or lætātor,	<i>Rejoice thou, or do thou rejoice,</i>
	3. Lætātor,	<i>Let him rejoice ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Lætamini,	<i>Rejoice ye, or do ye rejoice,</i>
	3. Lætantor,	<i>Let them rejoice.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Lætäri,	<i>To rejoice.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lætātus esse or fuisse,	<i>To have rejoiced.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Lætäturus esse,	<i>To be about to rejoice.</i>
	Lætäturus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to rejoice.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Lætans,</i>	<i>Rejoicing.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Lætātus,</i>	<i>Having rejoiced.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Lætatūrus,</i>	<i>About to rejoice.</i>
	<i>Lætandus,</i>	<i>To be rejoiced at.</i>

*Q.* Are all *Deponent* verbs of the first conjugation declined in this manner ?

*A.* They are.

*Q.* How are those of the other three conjugations declined ?

*A.* In the same general manner, making those alterations which are peculiar to each conjugation.

## EXAMPLES.

Arbitrabāmur.	Ortūri.	Tutātus sim.
Merītus sis.	Expertus est.	Amplectendus.
Questus fuēro.	Mirandus.	Blanditūrus esse.
Domināre.	Lamentāri.	Mori.
Recordantur.	Contemplaremīni.	Experiantur.
Tutamīni.	Vagabātur.	Usus.
Operatūrus fuisse.	Gloriāti fuerītis.	Usus esse.
Partiens.	Prædantur.	Interpretātus esses.
Pacti essētis.		

## VOCABULARY OF DEPONENT VERBS.

Amplector, amplecti, amplexus sum ; 3d conj. *to embrace.*

Arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum ; 1st conj. *to think.*

Blandior, blandiri, blanditus sum ; 4th conj. *to flatter.*

Contemplor, contemplāri, contemplātus sum ; 1st conj. *to behold.*

Domīnor, domināri, dominātus sum ; 1st conj. *to rule.*

Experior, experiri, expertus sum ; 4th conj. *to try.*

Glorior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum ; 1st conj. *to boast.*

Interprētor, interpretāri, interpretātus sum ; 1st conj. *to explain.*

Lamentor, lamentāri, lamentātus sum ; 1st conj. *to bewail.*

Mereor, merēri, meritus sum ; 2d conj. *to deserve.*

Miror, mirāri, mirātus sum ; 1st conj. *to wonder.*

Morior, mori, mortuus sum ; 3d conj. *to die.*

Opēror, operāri, operātus sum ; 1st conj. *to work.*

Orior, orīri, ortus sum ; 3d conj. *to rise.*

Paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum ; 3d conj. *to bargain.*

Partior, partiri, partitus sum ; 4th conj. *to divide.*

Prædor, prædāri, prædātus sum ; 1st conj. *to plunder.*

Queror, queri, questus sum ; 3d conj. *to complain.*

Recordor, recordāri, recordātus sum ; 1st conj. *to remember.*

Tutor, tutāri, tutātus sum ; 1st conj. *to defend.*

Utor, uti, usus sum ; 3d conj. *to use.*

Vagor, vagāri, vagātus sum ; 1st conj. *to wander.*

[For Irregular verbs, see Appendix after the Syntax.]

## PARTICIPLES.

**Q.** What is a *Participle*?

**A.** A *Participle* is a kind of adjective, formed from a verb, which in its meaning has reference to time.

**Q.** Why is it called a *Participle*?

**A.** From the Latin word *particeps*, a partaker, one who takes part of any thing, because it partakes of the nature of an adjective and a verb.

**Q.** How many participles has a Latin verb?

**A.** Four : two in the active voice, the present and the future ; as *amans*, loving ; *amatūrus*, about to love ; and two in the passive voice, the perfect and the future ; as *amātus*, loved ; *amandus*, to be loved.

## GERUNDS.

**Q.** What are *Gerunds*?

**A.** *Gerunds* are participial words, partaking of the nature of a noun, and of a verb.

**Q.** How are they like nouns?

**A.** In their form : for they are declined in all cases except the vocative, like a neuter noun of the *second declension*, and are governed like nouns.

**Q.** In what respects are they like verbs?

**A.** In their possessing time, and having the signification of the verbs from which they are derived, and governing the same case.

#### SUPINES.

**Q.** What are *Supines*?

**A.** *Supines* are also participial words. They are like the accusative and ablative cases of nouns of the *fourth declension*, and have the signification of the verb from which they are derived.

#### ADVERBS.

**Q.** What is an *Adverb*?

**A.** An *Adverb* is an indeclinable word *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, which affects their signification.

**Q.** Why is it so called?

**A.** From the Latin word *ad*, which means *to*, and *verbum*, which means a *word*; because it is always *added to* some verb, adjective, or other adverb.

#### PREPOSITIONS.

**Q.** What is a *Preposition*?

**A.** A *Preposition* is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another; and which governs nouns in the accusative and ablative cases.

**Q.** From what do *Prepositions* derive their name?

**A.** From two Latin words, namely, *præ*, which means *before*; and *positum*, (the supine of the verb *pono*,) *to put* or *place*; as these words are always *placed before* nouns.

Q. How many prepositions govern the accusative case?  
A. Thirty-two.\*

EXAMPLES OF PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Ad,	to ;	Cicero scripsit <sup>1</sup> epistolās <i>ad</i> Atticum.
Adversum,	} against ; opposite to ; towards ;	Bonus civis facit nihil <i>adversum</i> leges
Adversus,		Carthago fuit <i>adversus</i> Italiam.
		Cole <sup>2</sup> justitiam <i>adversus</i> omnes.
Ante,	before ;	Venit <i>ante</i> noctem.
Apud,	at ;	Cæsar posuit <sup>3</sup> ejus <sup>4</sup> castra <i>apud</i> Iconium.
	among ;	Bonus vir amabitur <i>apud</i> omnes.
Circa,	} about ;	Reges habent præsidia <i>circum</i> se.
Circum,		Fuit negligens <i>circa</i> ejus salutem.
Circiter,		Ille venit ad me <i>circiter</i> octavam horam.
Cis,	} on this side ;	Gallia est <i>citra</i> Italiam.
Citra,		
	within ;	Videbo te <i>cis</i> paucos dies.
Contra,	against ;	Ille vivit <i>contra</i> naturam.
	contrary to ;	Hannibal duxit <sup>5</sup> exercitum ad Romam <i>contra</i> expectationem.
Erga,	towards ;	Deus est bonus <i>erga</i> homines.
Extra,	without ;	Ille est <i>extra</i> vitium.
Infra,	beneath ;	Vitiōsus vir est <i>infra</i> observationem ullius.
	within ;	Veni <i>infra</i> decem dies.

\* These examples may be omitted until the scholar has gone as far as the 44th rule in Syntax. The words are in the general vocabulary.

<sup>1</sup> See *scribo*.

<sup>2</sup> Imperative mode of *colo*.

<sup>3</sup> See *pono*.

<sup>4</sup> *Ejus* genitive singular of *is*, (see page 44,) and means *of him*, or *of her*, or *of it* ; and may be translated *his*, *hers*, or *its* ; as,

pone ejus tergum,  
*behind his back.*

<sup>5</sup> See *duco*.

Inter,	between ;	Amor <i>inter</i> liberos et parentes est magnus.
	in the midst of ;	Epaminondas periit <i>inter</i> pugnam.
Intra,	within ;	<i>Intra</i> decem dies : <i>intra</i> muros.
Juxta,	near ;	Tumulus Hectōris est <i>juxta</i> Trojam.
Ob,	for ;	Faciam id <i>ob</i> suum emolumentum.
Penes,	in the power of ;	Omnia sunt <i>penes</i> Deum.
Per,	through ;	Nauta agit navim <i>per</i> mare, et <i>per</i> scopulos.
	by ;	Servitium interdicitur <i>per</i> naturam et <i>per</i> leges.
	with permission of ;	Non facies id <i>per</i> me.
Pone,	behind ;	Manus victæ sunt <sup>1</sup> <i>pone</i> ejus tergum.
Post,	after ;	<i>Post</i> mortem est judicium.
Præter,	except ;	Omnes, <i>præter</i> unum, condemnaverunt eum.
	before ;	Hector occisus est <sup>2</sup> <i>præter</i> oculos Trojanorum.
	contrary to ;	Recēpi tuas epistōlas <i>præter</i> expectationem.
Prope, <sup>3</sup>	near ;	Siste <i>prope</i> me.
	about ;	Sere frumentum <i>prope</i> mensem Junii.
Propter,	near, or by the side of ;	Amnis Eurōtas fluit <i>propter</i> Lacædæmonem.
	on account of ;	Amo te <i>propter</i> vestram sinceritatem.
Secundum,	after, next to ;	Ama tuos parentes <i>secundum</i> Deum.
	according to ;	Mors est <i>secundum</i> naturam.
Secus,	by, along ;	Processit <sup>4</sup> <i>secus</i> viam ad Romam.
Supra,	above, over ;	Nubes sunt <i>supra</i> nos.

<sup>1</sup> See *vincio*.    <sup>2</sup> For *occisus est*, see *occido*. Observe that the penult is long in this word, so as to distinguish it from *occido*, which means to *sit*.

<sup>3</sup> *Prope* perhaps is rather an adverb : when it governs an accusative *ad* is understood. However, as it is frequently used alone, it may be classed with the prepositions

<sup>4</sup> See *procēdo*



Trans,	<i>over, across ;</i>	Via ad Britanniam est <i>trans</i> Atlanticum mare.
Ultra,	<i>beyond ;</i>	Ille est <i>ultra</i> puerilam ætatem.
Usque,	<i>as far as ;</i>	Tendebat <i>usque</i> Romam.
Versus,	<i>towards ;</i>	Cæsar duxit exercitum <i>versus</i> Brundisium.

### PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

**Q.** How many prepositions govern the Ablative ?

**A.** Thirteen.

#### EXAMPLES.

A,	<i>by ;</i>	Clodius occisus est <i>a</i> Milōne.
Ab,	<i>from ;</i>	Cicero accepit maximos <sup>1</sup> honores <i>a</i> Romanis.
Abs,		
Absque,	<i>without ;</i>	Index nunquam puniret <i>absque</i> testimoniis.
Coram,	<i>before, in the presence of ;</i>	Habuit orationem <i>coram</i> omnibus.
Cum,	<i>with ;</i>	Populus Romanus gessit <sup>2</sup> bellum <i>cum</i> Jugurtha.
De,	<i>of, concerning ;</i>	Grotius scripsit <sup>3</sup> librum <i>de</i> jure pacis et belli.
	<i>from ;</i>	Nihil relictum est <sup>4</sup> <i>de</i> tanto patrimonio.
	<i>according to ;</i>	Bonus puer faciet omnia <i>de</i> voluntate ejus parentum. <sup>5</sup>
E,	<i>from ;</i>	Aromata veniunt <i>ex</i> India.
Ex,	<i>according to ;</i>	Condemnabatur <i>e</i> sententia judicis.
Palam,	<i>before, in the presence of ;</i>	Demosthenes habuit orationem <i>de</i> Philippo <i>palam</i> Atheniensibus.
Præ,	<i>before ;</i>	Antonius tulit <sup>6</sup> pugionem <i>præ</i> se.
	<i>in comparison with ;</i>	Bonus vir, quamvis pauper, est felix <i>præ</i> malo viro, quamvis dives est.
Pro,	<i>for ;</i>	Dedi viginti minas <i>pro</i> his libris.
	<i>in favor of ;</i>	Cicero fecit verba <i>pro</i> Milōne.
Sine,	<i>without ;</i>	Nihil magnum agitur <sup>7</sup> <i>sine</i> periculo.

<sup>1</sup> See *magnus*.

<sup>2</sup> See *gero*.

<sup>3</sup> See *scribo*.

<sup>4</sup> See *relinquo*.

<sup>5</sup> See page 18, last line.

<sup>6</sup> *Tulit* is the 3d per. sing. perf. ind. of the irregular verb *fero*, and *est* 'he carried' See Appendix

<sup>7</sup> See *ago*.

# PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

**Q.** How many Prepositions govern the *Accusative* and *Ablative*?

**A.** Five.

## EXAMPLES.

Clam,	<i>secretly, un- known to ;</i>	(acc.) Face nihil <i>clam</i> tuos parentes. (abl.) Cicéro vidit Fulviam <i>clam</i> conspiratoribus.
In,	<i>to ; into ; against ; in ; towards ; within ;</i>	(acc.) Milites vocabantur <i>in</i> arma. (acc.) Milites ruébant <i>in</i> pugnam. (acc.) Deus est irátus <i>in</i> malos. (abl.) Sunt multa templa <i>in</i> Româ. (abl.) Bonus vir est lenis <i>in</i> hoste. (abl.) Vidébo te <i>in</i> paucis diébus.
Sub,	<i>under ;</i>	(acc.) Græci pugnábant cum Trojânis <i>sub</i> muros Trojæ.
	<i>beneath ;</i>	(abl.) Venâtor manet <i>sub</i> frigido Jove.*
Subter,	<i>beneath ; under ;</i>	(acc.) Margaritæ sunt <i>subter</i> mare. (abl.) Græci oppugnavêrunt muros <i>subter</i> testudine.
Super,	<i>above ; beyond ; upon ;</i>	(acc.) Dominus est <i>super</i> servum. (acc.) Græcia est <i>super</i> Italiam. (abl.) Dormias cum me <i>super</i> viridi fronde.
	<i>about ;</i>	(abl.) Scripsit ad me <i>super</i> libris.

# PREPOSITION GOVERNING THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE.

**Q.** What Preposition is there which governs the Genitive plural, and the Ablative of both numbers?

**A.** Tenus.

**Q.** What is there peculiar to this preposition?

**A.** It is always *put after* the noun which it governs.

---

\* See Jupîter.

## EXAMPLES.

*Tenus, with an Ablative.*

Tenus, *up to, as far as* ;    abdīdit\* ensem capūlo tenus  
    fæce tenus : lacertis tenus

*Tenus, with a Genitive.*

Tenus, *down to* ;                    pedum tenus.  
                          *as far as* ;                    labiōrum tenus.

## INTERJECTIONS.

**Q.** What is an *Interjection*?

**A.** An *Interjection* is an indeclinable word, *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind ; as Oh ! Ah ! Eheu, *alas* ! Euge, *well done* !

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**Q.** What is a *Conjunction*?

**A.** A *Conjunction* is an indeclinable word that serves to join words and sentences together ; as, et, *and* ; sed, *but* ; aut, *or*.

Sex et sex sunt duodēcim.

*Six and six are twelve.*

Tu legis Virgilium, sed ego lego Cicerōnem.

*You read Virgil, but I read Cicero.*

\* Abdīdit from abdo.

## SYNTAX.

---

**Q.** WHAT is *Syntax*?

**A.** *Syntax* is that part of Grammar which relates to the construction of words in sentences, and tells us how to put them rightly together.

**Q.** From what does it take its name?

**A.** From two Greek words, *taxis*, (τάξις) which means *the act of placing*, and *sūn*, (σύν) which means *together*: thus *Syntax* is *the act of placing together* words in sentences.

**Q.** What relations have words to one another?

**A.** Two: *Concord* and *Government*.

**Q.** What is *Concord*?

**A.** *Concord* is when one word agrees with another in some particulars, as in gender, number, person, and case.

**Q.** What is *Government*?

**A.** *Government* is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case or mode, in order to govern it.

### GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

**Q.** What are the *General Principles of Syntax*?

**A.** 1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood, by a verbal adjective, or by a verb.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition ; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

#### GENERAL RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.

**Q.** Are the words in the Latin language placed in sentences in the natural English order ?

**A.** They are not, but are arranged in such a manner as to make the sentence sound most harmoniously.

**Q.** Why does not this manner of collocation cause confusion in the sense ?

**A.** Because the endings of the nouns, and the variations of the adjectives and verbs, show their relation, and direct in what manner each word should be taken in.

**Q.** Give an example.

**A.** Labor<sup>2</sup> omnia<sup>4</sup> improbus<sup>1</sup> vincit.<sup>3</sup>  
*labour all things persevering conquers.*

If these Latin words be construed in the order in which they stand, they make no sense : but if they be construed as they are numbered, that is, according to the *General Rules of Construction*, a correct English sentence is made, which is, *persevering labour conquers all things*.\*

---

\*The Latin language, from its admitting so much transposition possesses a great advantage over the English. Thus we can say *Han*

**Q.** What are some of the *General Rules of Construction*?

**A.**

**Rule 1.**

Construe the nominative case first, with the adjective or words that belong to it, if there be any :—then, the verb :—then, the word or words which the verb governs :—lastly, the preposition, if there be any, with the word depending on it.

**Rule 2.**

A genitive case is usually construed after another noun.

**Rule 3.**

An infinitive mode is generally construed after another verb.

**Rule 4.**

An adjective or participle, if no other word depend on it, must be construed *before* its noun.

---

*Hannibālem vicit Scipio*, or *Scipio vicit Hannibālem*, or *Scipio Hannibālem vicit*, or *vicit Scipio Hannibālem*. The sense is the same, *Scipio conquered Hannibal*. Because, according to the Rules of Construction, in whatever order the words may be placed, we must take in the nominative, *Scipio*, first ; then the verb, *vicit* ; then the word which the verb governs, which is the accusative *Hannibālem*. But in English we can state the fact only by one order, *Scipio conquered Hannibal*. If we reverse the order and say *Hannibal conquered Scipio*, we state what is not true. If we say *Scipio Hannibal conquered*, or *Hannibal Scipio conquered*, we state an ambiguous proposition, or write a sentence which has no meaning. The chief reason why the Latin admits of this transposition, is the changes which nouns undergo in their different cases. In Latin the nominative of a verb would be altered if made the object of it, as, nom. *Hannibal*, acc. *Hannibālem*. But in English it would remain the same ; as when we say *Hannibal conquered Scipio*, *Hannibal* is the nominative ; should we say *Scipio conquered Hannibal*, *Hannibal* would be the object of the verb, but would not be changed in its form.

*Rule 5.*

If an adjective or participle govern a word *after* it, it must be construed after its noun.

*Rule 6.*

In an ablative absolute, construe the noun *before* the adjective or participle which agrees with it.

*Rule 7.*

An adverb is not to be construed with a noun, but rather with a verb, or an adjective, or a participle.

*Rule 8.*

After a preposition constantly look for an accusative or ablative case.

*Rule 9.*

The word governed must generally be construed *immediately* after the word which governs it.

## CONCORD.

**Q.** What words agree together in sentences ?

**A.** 1. A noun with another noun. 2. An adjective with a noun. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one noun with another.*

**RULE I.** Nouns signifying the same thing, agree in case.

*Examples.*

Cicēro orātor.

Cato, vir fortis.

Urbs Athēnæ.

Deus, auctor omnium <sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>*Omnium* is an adjective in the genitive plural, and means *of all*, and agrees with *negotiōrum* understood. As it has no noun expressed with which it agrees, it means *of all things*.

Urbis Athenārum.	Cicerōni oratōri.
Cæsar imperātor.	Cæsārem imperatōrem.
Philosōphi, magistri virtūtis.	

## 2. Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns.

**RULE II.** Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles, agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

### *Latin Examples to be translated into English.*

Vir bonus.	Legis divīnæ.
Virōrum bonōrum.	Tonitru terribīle.
Viris bonis.	Nomīna propria.
Puer studiōsus.	Æstatibus calīdis.
Puēro studiōso.	Proxīmo anno.
Puēri studiōsi.	Inclytissīma templa.
Filia cara.	Cariōris amīci.
Filiam caram.	Gravissīmi casus.
Filias caras.	Quinque mensibus.
Mater benigna.	Minīmi puēri.
Spes ultīma.	

### *English Examples to be rendered into Latin.*

In a fertile field.	Ager fertilis.
Of learned men.	Vir doctus.
On slippery ice.	Glacies lubricus.
With the best boys.	Bonus puer.
The handsomest women.	Pulcher sœmīna.
Of a larger city.	Magnus urbs.
The smallest feet.	Parvus pes.
With a treacherous friend.	Perfidus amīcus.



Divine laws, (nom.)	Lex divinus.
The bright sun, (acc.)	Sol clarus.
A careful husbandman, (acc.)	Agricōla provīdus.
With a faithful friend.	Amicus fidēlis.
Of a swift horse.	Equus celer.
To an ancient king.	Rex antīquus.
Fair women, (nom.)	Fēmīna pulcher.

### 3. *Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.*

**RULE III.** A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person.

#### *Latin Examples.*

Ventus spirat.	Ego vidēbo.
Luna lucet.	Veni, vidi, vici. <sup>1</sup>
Ignis urit.	Puēri scribunto.
Aves volant.	Fulgēbat luna.
Domīnus jubet.	Surge.—Legīto.
Sol occīdit.	Lepōres cucurrissent.
Milītes vulnerantur.	Venient juvēnes.
Servus paret.	Disce aut discēde.
Canis custōdit.	Sit lux, et lux fuit.
Bonus homo amātur.	Vox audītur.
Sol splendet.	Puēri docentor.
Puēri erudiuntur.	Hostes victi erant.
Milītes pugnābant.	Tempōra mutantur.
Troja fuit. <sup>2</sup>	Domus ædificabītur.
Equus currīto.	Caput tegerētur.
Crimīna puniantur.	Panis emerētur.
Gemma reperiātur.	Hostes capti essent.

<sup>1</sup> For *vici* see *vinco*.

<sup>2</sup> See *sum*.

*English Examples.*

Our master comes.	Noster magister venio.
The good boy learns.	Bonus puer disco.
The body is mortal.	Corpus mortālis sum.
Death is certain.	Mors certus sum.
Life is uncertain.	Vita incertus sum.
The earth is round.	Terra sum rotundus.
The stars are bright.	Stella sum clarus.
Time flies.	Tempus fugio.
I was weeping.	Fleo.
The king will conquer.	Rex vinco.
May fortune favour.	Fortūna faveo.
Good boys will be praised.	Bonus puer laudo.
The oars are broken.	Remus frango.
The soldiers will be killed.	Miles interficio.
Let kings be honoured.	Rex honōro.

*Accusative before the Infinitive.*

**RULE IV.** The infinitive mode has an accusative before it ; as,

Gaudeo te<sup>1</sup> valēre,  
*I am glad that you are well.*

Virgilius jussērat<sup>2</sup> sua carmīna cremāri,  
*Virgil ordered that his poems should be burnt.*

*Latin Examples.*

Volo te venisse. Scio Petrum flēre.  
 Amor jussit me scribēre.

<sup>1</sup> To the noun before the infinitive, must always be prefixed the English particle *that*.

<sup>2</sup> *Jussērat* from *jubeo*.

Ferunt<sup>1</sup> Anaxagōram nunquam risisse.<sup>2</sup>

Scio Regem regnāre. Scis me amāre verum.<sup>3</sup>

Sepulchrum Cyri aperiri Alexander<sup>4</sup> jussit.

Audivimus Epaminondam esse modestum, prudentem  
clementem, patientemque.<sup>5</sup>

Virgilius dicit labōrem vincēre omnia.

Scimus solem esse lucem mundi.

Auctōres dicunt Helēnam fuisse causam belli Trojāni.

### *English Examples.*

I hear that you are ill.	Audio tu ægrōto.
The messenger relates that a battle has been fought, and that the enemies have been defeated.	Nuntius narro prælium pug- no, et hostis vinco.
I confess that I have sinned.	Confiteor ego pecco.
We say that death will come.	Dico mors venio.
Do you see that the sun shines?	Video sol luceo?
Horace says that anger is a short madness.	Horatius dico ira sum brevis furor.
I am glad that thou hast re- turned.	Gaudeo tu redeo.

<sup>1</sup> *Ferunt* is from the irregular verb *fero*, (see Appendix,) and means *they say*.

<sup>2</sup> *Risisse* from *rideo*.

<sup>3</sup> *Verum* is in the accusative by rule 18th.

<sup>4</sup> See the first rule of construction.

<sup>5</sup> *Que* is a conjunction, which is always added to the end of the latter of two words, instead of being placed between them: it is equivalent to *et*.

*The same Case after a Verb as before it.*

**RULE V.** Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing.*

*Latin Examples.*

Ego sum discipulus.	Illa incēdit regīna.
Tu vocāris Joannes.	Scio vos esse discipulos.
Anīma est immortalis.	Vis consuetudinis est magna.
Magni principes existimantur felicissimi, paupēres existimantur miserrīmi.	
Scio illum habēri <sup>1</sup> sapientem.	
Dolor non est maximum <sup>2</sup> malum.	
Usus est optimus <sup>3</sup> magister.	
Cicēro fuit clarus <sup>4</sup> orātor.	
Delector dici bonus et prudens vir.	
Deus est spirītus. Virtus est pretiōsa gemma.	

*English Examples.*

Studious boys will be learned men.	Studiōsus puer sum doctus vir.
Justice is a most excellent <sup>5</sup> virtue.	Justitia sum præstans virtus.
America is called the new world.	Amerīca voco novus mundus.

<sup>1</sup> Illum habēri, *that he is esteemed.* Habēri from habeo.

<sup>2</sup> Maximum, superlative degree, of magnus.

<sup>3</sup> Optimus, superlative, of bonus.

<sup>4</sup> Clarus, famous.

<sup>5</sup> Most excellent is of the superlative degree: præstans, *excellent*; præstantior, *more excellent*; præstantissimus, *most excellent*. This word must be præstantissima, in the feminine gender, to agree with virtus, virtue, which is feminine.

A true friend is a great treasure.	Amicus verus thesaurus sum magnus.
Achilles was a Grecian general.	Achilles sum Græcus dux.
Hector was a Trojan general.	Hector sum Trojānus dux.
Cræsus was a rich man, but Solon was a wise man.	Cræsus sum dives, sed Solon sum fortis vir.
Pompey was named "the great."	Pompeius voco magnus.

## GOVERNMENT.

### I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

**RULE VI.** One Noun governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Noun signifies a different thing from the former.*)

#### *Latin Examples.*

Amor Dei.	Fons aquæ.
Domus Cæsaris.	Ratio hominis.
Lex Natūræ.	Juba leonis.
Virtus est perfectio ratiōnis.	Natūra est mater omnium.
Sol est lux mundi.	Juno Jovis <sup>1</sup> conjux erat.
Magna est vis conscientiæ.	Honor est merces virtutis.
Philosophia est mater omnium bonarum artium.	
Dei timor est sapientiæ principium.	
Neptūnus est numen aquarum.	
Multitudo morborum est infinita.	
Varietas linguarum est magna.	
Justitia est regina omnium virtutum.	

---

<sup>1</sup> See Jupiter.

*English Examples.*

The wonders of the world are seven :	Miracŭlum mundus sum sep- tem.
1. The Pyramids of Egypt,	Pyrāmis Ægyptus.
2. The Tower of Pharos,	Turris Pharus.
3. The Walls of Babylon,	Murus Babŷlon.
4. The Temple of Diana,	Templum Diāna.
5. The Sepulchre of Mausō- lus,	Sepulchrum Mausōlus.
6. The Colossus of Rhodes,	Colossus Rhodus.
7. The Statue of Olympian Jupiter.	Statua Jupīter Olympius.
Piety is the foundation of all the virtues.	Piētas sum omnis virtus fun- damentum.
Anger is the beginning of madness.	Ira sum dementia initium
Envy is the attendant of virtue.	Invidia sum comes virtus.
Sleep is the image of death.	Somnus sum mors imāgo.
The event of war is uncer- tain.	Eventus bellum sum incertus.
Helen was the cause of the Trojan war.	Helēna causa sum bellum Trojānus.

**RULE VII.** But if the latter Noun have an Adjective of description joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative ; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, Gen. or,  
summâ prudentiâ, Abl.

*a man of the greatest prudence.*

*Latin Examples.*

Vir summæ prudentiæ. Puer probâ indôle.  
 Consul parvo et pravo anîmo.  
 Cimon Atheniensis fuit vir summâ liberalitatē.  
 Epaminondas fuit dux incredibîli virtûte.  
 Amo puërum ingenii præclâri.  
 Cicero fuit vir miti ingenio.  
 Cato vir magnâ auctoritatē.  
 Diogēnes fuit acerbâ natūrâ.  
 Magister facilè docet puëros ingeniis acûtis.  
 Gallus quidam, eximiâ corpōris magnitudîne.

*English Examples.*

A man of no experience in war.	Vir nullus stipendium <sup>1</sup> bellum.
A woman of high birth.	Mulier magnus ortus.
Athens was a city of great splendour.	Athēnæ sum urbs magnus splendôr.
He was a boy of a studious disposition.	Ille sum puer studiōsus indōles.
She was a girl of great modesty.	Ille sum puella eximius modestia.
Cicero was an orator of consummate eloquence.	Cicēro sum orātor præclārus eloquentia.
Hannibal was a general of wonderful courage.	Hannībal sum imperātor virtus admirabilis.
Fabius was a general of great prudence.	Fabius sum dux magnus prudentia.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Experience in war* may be rendered by the genitive of the noun *stipendium*, 2d declension, neuter; it means literally, *soldiers' wages*.

*Adjectives taken as Substantives.*

**RULE VIII.** An Adjective in the neuter gender, without a Noun with which it agrees, governs the genitive ; as,

Multum pecuniæ,  
*much of money, or much money.*  
 Plus eloquentiæ,  
*more of eloquence, or more eloquence.*

*Latin Examples.*

Habeo tantum otii.      Assequēbar tantum boni.  
 Est multum mali in exemplo.  
 Est multum mali in discordiâ.  
 Narrābo cūm habeo aliquid novi.  
 Quid consilii capies ?  
 Decrēvit quondam Senatus, ut Lucius Opimius vidēret, ne  
 quid<sup>1</sup> respubiica detrimenti capēret.  
 Gloria habet plus molestiæ quam voluptātis.  
 Qui<sup>2</sup> habet paululum pecuniæ, habet etiam paululum fidēi.

*English Examples.*

What is the news ?      Quis novus (*gen. sing.*) sum ?  
 He has no sincerity : (*no-thing of sincerity.*)      Ille habeo nullus sincērus.  
 How much money have you ?      Quantus pecunia habeo ?  
 (*how much of money.*)  
 There is very great good<sup>3</sup> in friendship.      Sum multus bonus in amicitia.

---

<sup>1</sup> Quid detrimenti, *any injury.*

<sup>2</sup> Qui to be rendered by *he who.*

<sup>3</sup> Very great good, *plurimum boni.*



He has very little <sup>1</sup> courage,	Ille habeo parvus fortitūdo,
but very much honesty.	sed multus probitas.
Where there is most study	Ubi sum multus studium, ibi
there is least noise.	sum parvus clamor.

**RULE IX.** *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative ; as,

Est opus pecuniā,  
*there is need of money.*

*Latin Examples.*

Est usus viribus.	Opus est monitōre.
Opus est magistratibus.	Nihil opus est oratione longā.
Clamas, cum opus est tacito. <sup>2</sup>	
Si vis esse doctus, opus est diligentia.	

*English Examples.*

There is need of brevity.	Sum brevitās opus.
There is need of thy authority.	Opus sum tuus auctoritas.
There is need of your attention and prudence.	Opus sum vester attentio et prudentia.
There is no occasion for disputes.	Nihil usus sum lis.
There is no occasion for words.	Nihil opus sum verbum.
In trouble there is need of the counsels of a friend.	In dolor opus sum amicus consilium.

---

<sup>1</sup> 'Very little' to be rendered by the superlative.

<sup>2</sup> *Tacito*, an adjective used for a noun, meaning *silence*.

## II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

**RULE X.** Verbal Adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, require the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ,  
*desirous of glory.*

*Latin Examples.*

Bonus<sup>1</sup> est ignārus fraudis. Scipio fuit expertus belli.<sup>2</sup>

Miles Romānus fuit patiens<sup>3</sup> algōris et famis.

Ejus mens est conscia recti.<sup>4</sup>

Avārus<sup>1</sup> est studiōsus pecuniæ.

Illa est laudis avida.

Bonus<sup>1</sup> est memor beneficiōrum.

Cæsar fuit cupidus triumphī.

Posteritas nunquam erit immemor hujus rei.

Natūra homīnum est novitātis avida.

Anīmus, futūri anxius, calamitōsus est.

Tempus est edax rerum.

*English Examples.*

The mind of men is ignorant of fate.      Nescius mens homo fatum

I am not unmindful of your commands.      Non sum tuus mandātum im-

mēmor.

<sup>1</sup> *Vir* is here understood. Translate bonus, a good man.

<sup>2</sup> *Belli* literally means *of war*, but in connexion with the adjective *expertus*, English idiom requires it to be translated *in war*. It very frequently happens that the genitive and dative cannot be rendered by their respective signs, *of* and *to*, or *for*, without doing violence to the established modes of expression in our own language.

<sup>3</sup> *Patiens*, *patient of*, that is, *able to bear*.

<sup>4</sup> *Recti*, an adjective, used for a noun, and means *of right*, that is, *of rectitude*.

Cæsar was skilled in many things.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar doctus sum multis res.

A soldier experienced in war. Miles bellum expertus.

The mind is capable of every virtue. Mens omnis virtus sum capax.

Many are more desirous of disputing than of the truth. Multus sum dispūto<sup>2</sup> quam veritas avidus.

Live mindful of old age and death. Vivo memor senectus et mors

Croesus was most greedy of gold. Aurum avidus Croesus sum.

**RULE XI.** Partitives,<sup>3</sup> comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Optimus omnium,	Unus nostrum,
<i>the best of all.</i>	<i>one of us.</i>

*Latin Examples.*

Quis mortalium ?	Multæ arborum.
Aliquis philosophorum.	Una musarum.
Senior fratrum.	Quis nostrum.
Octāvus sapientum.	

<sup>1</sup> *In many things* must be rendered by the *genitive*, in connexion with the adjective skilful.

<sup>2</sup> Use the genitive of the gerund. See Rule 32, Obs. 2d.

<sup>3</sup> Words are called *partitives* when they mean *part* of any number: thus, *aliquis* is a *partitive*, because it means *some one*: as, *aliquis philosophorum*, *some one of the philosophers*, that is, *some part* of that class of men. *Comparatives* and *superlatives* are adjectives of the comparative and superlative degrees. *Interrogatives* ask a question. *Numerals* define some number.

Cicēro fuit doctissimū Romanōrum.

Aristotēles et Plato omnium Græcōrum fuērunt doctissimī.

Pavo est formosissimā omnium avium.

Stultissimā animalium sunt lanāta.

Beneficiōrum<sup>1</sup> maxīma sunt ea quæ a parentībus accipimus.

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

*English Examples.*

Calumny is the most baneful of all things.	Omnis res sum nocens calumnia.
--	--------------------------------

Plato was the most learned of the Grecian philosophers.	Plato philosophus Græcus sum doctus.
---	--------------------------------------

The Amazon is the greatest of all rivers.	Amāzon omnis flumen sum magnus.
---	---------------------------------

Death is the end of all things. <sup>2</sup>	Mors sum omnis finis.
--	-----------------------

Which of you were here yesterday?	Quis tu hic herē sum?
-----------------------------------	-----------------------

He is the elder of the brothers.	Ille sum frater senex.
----------------------------------	------------------------

The lion is the bravest of animals.	Leo sum animal fortis.
-------------------------------------	------------------------

The first of the Roman kings was Romulus.	Prior rex Romānus sum Romulus.
---	--------------------------------

Demosthenes was the most distinguished of the Grecian orators.	Græcus orātor præstans sum Demosthēnes.
--	---

<sup>1</sup> Beneficiōrum, of all kindnesses.

<sup>2</sup> Of all things, to be rendered by *omnium* only: the word *things* is seldom expressed in Latin, but the adjective is put in the neuter gender, and agrees with a noun understood.

2. *Adjectives governing the Dative.*

**RULE XII.** Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c., govern the Dative ; or, any adjective may govern the Dative in Latin, which has the signs **TO** or **FOR** after it in English ; as,

Utilis bello,	Amicus omnibus,
<i>useful for war.</i>	<i>friendly to all.</i>

*Latin Examples.*

Utilis bello.	Perniciōsus reipublicæ.
Similis patri.	Nil mortalibus arduum est.
Niger est color contrarius albo.	Ea res vobis utilis est.
Quis amicior quam frater fratri ?	
Nemo fuit reipublicæ perniciosior.	
Tempus vobis est opportunissimum.	
Gallia est contigua Hispaniæ.	
Omnes ancipiti fortunæ obnoxii sunt.	
Gens Trojana fuit Junoni inimica.	
Catilina fuit omnibus bonis invisus.	
Urticæ proxima sæpe rosa est.	

*English Examples.*

A good boy is kind to animals.	Bonus puer animalium sum lenis.
He was grateful to his <sup>1</sup> patron.	Ille sum is patronus gratus.
Spain is next to Portugal.	Hispania Lusitania sum propior.

---

<sup>1</sup> *His* is rendered in Latin by *ejus*, of him ; the genitive of the adjective pronoun *is*, *ea*, *id*, he, she, it ; see page 44.

Death is like sleep.	Mors somnus similis sum.
The stars are convenient to mariners.	Stella sum nauta commodus.
Death is common to all.	Mors omnis communis sum.
A good man is merciful to his enemies.	Bonus is inimicus sum mitis.
Nothing is difficult to a brave man.	Nihil fortis sum difficilia.
A rose is often next to a thorn.	Urtica propior sæpe rosa sum.

### 3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

**RULE XIII.** These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

*Dignus honore*, *Contentus parvo*, *Ortus regibus*,  
*worthy of honour. content with little. descended from kings*

#### *Latin Examples*

Cicero fuit dignus honore.

Ille dives<sup>1</sup> qui contentus est parvo.

Ille summo magistratu præditus fuit

Homerus fuit captus<sup>2</sup> oculis.

Milites suis viribus freti, vicērunt.

Senatus Romanus Catilinam morte dignissimum esse decrevit.

Mecenas fuit editus regibus.

Parvo contenta natura est.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Est* is understood.

<sup>2</sup> *Captus* is the perfect passive participle of *capio*, and means *taken*; it means *deprived of*

Achilles<sup>1</sup> fuit natus Thetide.<sup>2</sup>  
 Romulus<sup>3</sup> fuit satus divinâ stirpe.  
 Studiösus puer est dignus laude.

*English Examples.*

Learn <sup>4</sup> to be content with little.	Disco sum parvus contentus.
How happens it, <sup>5</sup> that no one lives <sup>6</sup> contented with his lot?	Quis fio, ut nemo is sors vivo contentus?
Those only are happy who are endowed with virtue.	Qui virtus præditus sum, so- lus beatus.
Catiline <sup>7</sup> was descended from a noble family.	Catilina nobilis stirps ortus sum.
Do nothing unworthy of a man.	Facio nihil vir indignus.
Relying on his own strength, he conquered.	Fretus suus vis, vinco.
He who is content with his own is truly the most opu- lent.	Qui suus ( <i>plur.</i> ) contentus sum, is verè dives.

<sup>1</sup> Achilles was one of the Grecian generals who went to the Trojan war. He was killed with an arrow, by Paris.

<sup>2</sup> *Thetide* from *Thetis*, who was one of the sea deities.

<sup>3</sup> Romulus was the founder of Rome, 753 years before Christ.

<sup>4</sup> *Learn* is in the imperative mode—put the Latin in the 2d *pr. sing.*

<sup>5</sup> *How happens it*, is a phrase to be rendered by *quâ fit*; *quâ* is an adverb, for the ablative quo, *by what, modo, manner*, being understood: quo modo, *in what manner, or by what means*. *Fit* is from the irregular verb *fio, to be done, to happen*; indicative mode, present tense, 3d person singular; *fio, fis, fit*: *plural, fimus, fitis, fiunt*.—See Appendix.

<sup>6</sup> The conjunction *ut* requires that *vivo* should be put in the *conjunctive mode*.

<sup>7</sup> Catiline was an infamous Roman who conspired with others to destroy his country.

He who is kind to the poor      Qui pauper benevölus, is dig-  
deserves praise.                      nus sum honor.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

**RULE XIV.** Adjectives of plenty or want, govern the genitive or ablative ; as,

Omnia      sunt plena Dei,  
*all things are full of God.*  
Ille est inops virtüte, or virtütis,  
*he is void of virtue.*

*Latin Examples.*

Plenus iræ.                      Inops ratiōne.  
Ille est abundans divitiis.      Omnia Dei sunt plena.  
Nemo est vacuus molestiâ.  
Decem naves fuērunt frumento onustæ.  
Diogēnes fuit sapientiâ quàm pecuniâ locupletior.  
Terra est ferax Cerēris.<sup>1</sup>  
Quauquam pauper argenti et auri, multum honorātus est.  
Mesopotamia est regio aquarum egina.

*English Examples.*

Italy was then full of Gre-      Italia tunc ars et disciplīna  
cian arts and discipline.      Græcus sum plenus.  
Strength, without counsel,      Vis, consilium expers, nihil  
is nothing.                      sum.  
Although destitute of the      Etsi vita solatium inops, sum  
comforts of life, he was      felix.  
happy.  
Brutes are without reason.      Bestia ratio sum expers.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ceres was the goddess of corn and tillage, and is here put for corn itself, by a figure of speech called *metonymy*.



I see that you will be <sup>1</sup> free	Videō tu fore pericūlum om-
from all danger.	nis expers.
The harbour is very full of	Portus navis plenus sum.
ships.	
He was laden with the spoils	Ille Oriens spoliū sum onus
of the East.	tus.

### III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

#### 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONE CASE ONLY.

##### 1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

**RULE XV.** The verb *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis,  
it is of the king, or, it is the king's; that is,  
it is the property of the king.

#### *Latin Examples.*

Est<sup>2</sup> fortis animi non perturbāri in rebus aspēris.<sup>3</sup>

Est insipientis non velle<sup>4</sup> discere.

Hic hortus est patris mei.

<sup>1</sup> That you will be; use the accusative before the infinitive *fore*.

<sup>2</sup> *Est* is here used impersonally, or without any nominative. But strictly speaking, the latter clause of the sentence, *non perturbāri in rebus aspēris*, is the nominative. For the nominative is always the answer to the question, what? So here the question is, what is the part of a brave mind? and the answer, *non perturbāri in rebus aspēris*, not to be troubled in adversity, is the nominative to *est*.

<sup>3</sup> In *rebus aspēris*, literally means, in rough or severe affairs, in hardships, or elegantly, in adversity.

<sup>4</sup> *Velle* is the infinitive of the irregular verb *volo*, infinitive *vell*, perfect *volui*, to be willing, or to wish.

Est militum parere suo duci.<sup>1</sup>  
 Hominis est errare. Hi libri sunt mei sobrini.  
 Temeritas est florentis ætatis,<sup>2</sup> prudentia<sup>3</sup> senectutis.  
 Amici est adjuvare ejus amicum.  
 Est nullius, nisi insipientis, in errore perseverare.  
 Est oratoris apte, distincte, ornatèque dicere.

*English Examples.*

This house is my father's,	Hic domus sum pater meus;
but that orchard is a	sed iste pomarium sum vi-
neighbour's.	cinus.
The books are now my brother's.	Liber sum meus frater.
To contemn riches <sup>4</sup> is the	Divitiæ contemno sum mag-
part of a great mind.	nus animus.
It is the part of a foolish boy	Sum stultus puer studium ne
to neglect his studies. <sup>5</sup>	gligo.
It is the part of a master to	Sum magister doceo.
teach.	
It is the duty of him to speak,	Is loquor sum, sed ille audio
but of them to hear.	

**RULE XVI.** *Misereor, miseresco, and satägo* govern the genitive; as,

Miserere tuorum civium,  
*Pity your countrymen.*

<sup>1</sup> *Duci* from *dux*, in the dative, and governed by *parere*, by observation 5th, under rule 17th.

<sup>2</sup> *Florentis ætatis*, literally, *of flourishing age*; elegantly, *of youth*.

<sup>3</sup> *Est* is here understood.

<sup>4</sup> Put the Latin of *riches* in the accusative case, by rule 18th.

Put the Latin of *studies* also in the accusative.

*Latin Examples.*

Satāgit suārum rerum.

Miserēre labōrum<sup>1</sup> tantōrum.

Miserescīte regis. Est boni viri, paup̄erum miserēri.

Miserēre domūs labentis.<sup>2</sup>

Irārum et molestiārum muliebrum Xantippe per diem per  
que noctem satagēbat.

*English Examples.*

I pity his distress for food.<sup>3</sup> Misereor is esuries.

Pity my brother.

Misereor frater meus.

Death pities neither rich nor poor. Mors nec dīves nec paup̄er  
miseresco.

He who is always busy in his studies, will be learned. Qui studium suus satāge  
sum doctus.

*2. Verbs governing the Dative.*

**RULE XVII.** Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English ; as,

Finis venit imperio,  
*an end has come to the empire.*

*Latin Examples.*

Anīmus<sup>4</sup> redit hostībus. Mala eveniunt bonis.<sup>5</sup>

Non nobis solum nati sumus. Sol lucet etiam scelerātis.

<sup>1</sup> Labōrum here means *hardships*.

<sup>2</sup> Labentis is the present participle of the deponent verb *labor*.

<sup>3</sup> *Distress for food*, esuries, noun, *fem.* 5th declension.

<sup>4</sup> Anīmus here means *courage*.

<sup>5</sup> When the adjective is thus used without a substantive expressed, *homo*, or *negotium*, is generally understood ; as in this case *mala* means *evils*, that is, *mala negotia*, *evil things* ; *bonis*, *to good*, that is, *bonis hominibus*, *to good men*.

<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
Hæret latēri lethālis arundo.  
Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audentior ito.  
Natūra animalibus varia tegumenta tribuit.  
Homīni soli avaritia data est.

### *English Examples.*

Fortune is prejudicial to the mind.	Fortūna officio mens.
To give way to the time is the part of a wise man.	Tempus cedo sapiens sum.
A fleet of seventy ships was given to Miltiades.	Classis septuaginta navis Miltiades dedo. ( <i>perf. pass.</i> )
Praise is due to virtue.	Laus virtus debeo.

[The dative, however, cannot always be rendered by the signs TO and FOR. Under this rule, therefore, it will be necessary to give, in a few observations, such verbs as cannot be followed by these signs.]

**Observation First.** SUM and its compounds govern the dative, (except *possum*;) as,

Præfuit	exercitui,	Adfuit	precibus.
<i>he commanded the army.</i>		<i>he was present at prayers.</i>	

***Latin Examples.***

**Adēro<sup>1</sup> tuis rebus difficillimis.  
Cicēro præfuit toti provinciæ.  
Nec sibi nec altēris prosunt.  
Nostro sermōni<sup>2</sup> interfuit.  
Pudor non obfuit oratiōni.**

<sup>1</sup> *Adĕro* from *adsum*.

<sup>2</sup> *Sermōni* here means *conversation*.

Dum aliquid virium<sup>1</sup> tibi sup̄erest.  
 Creāti sunt decem prætōres, qui exercitui præessent.

*English Examples.*

In this man there was much vanity.	Hic homo ( <i>dat.</i> ) multum <sup>2</sup> + nitas ( <i>gen.</i> ) insum.
Brutus commanded the fleet.	Brutus classis præsum.
Cicero was not present at the battle of Pharsalia.	Cicēro Pharsalia pugna non adsum.

*Observation Second.* EST taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person ; as,

Liber est mihi,  
*a book is to me, that is, I have a book.*  
 Dico libros esse mihi,  
*I say that books are to me, that is, I say that I have books*

*Latin Examples.*

Est mihi pater.	Sunt nobis mitia poma.
Magna vis est leōni.	Est mihi nomen Alexandri
Antiquissimis hominibus specus erant pro domibus.	
Sed Macedonibus assidua certamina cum Thracibus et lilyriis fuere.	

*English Examples.*

I have a good knife.	Bonus culter ego sum.
I have sweet verses.	Sum ego dulcis carmen.
The hare has great swiftness.	Magnus sum velocitas lepus.
The Romans had many battles with the Carthaginians.	Romānus cum Carthageniensis multus certamen sum.

<sup>1</sup> *Virium* from *vis* ; governed by *aliquid*, by rule 8th.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule 8th.

*Observation Third.* Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative.

*Latin Examples.*

Satisfecit mihi per litēras. Dii tibi benefaciant.<sup>1</sup>

Maledixit mihi sine<sup>2</sup> ullā causā.

Tuis amīcis malefācis.

Pulchrum est benefacere reipublicæ.

Tempus est ludere cum seriis rebus satisfecerimus.

*English Examples.*

Do evil to no one.

Nemo malefacio.

It is delightful to serve your friends.

Gratus sum benefacio amīcus.

He discharged his duty.

Is (*gen.*) officium satisfacio.

*Observation Fourth.* Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PRÆ, POST, SUB, and SUPER, govern the dative.

*Latin Examples.*

Annue<sup>3</sup> audacibus cæptis.

Huc vestris oris pauci adnavimus.

Antecellit omnibus in cursu.

Puer gestit antecellere paribus.

Mors imminet omnibus.

<sup>1</sup> Observe to give to *benefaciant* the sign of the subjunctive mode, *may*, and put it before the English of *Dii*; as, *may the Gods*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> See the prepositions which govern the ablative.

<sup>3</sup> *Annue*, compounded of *ad* and *nue*. In almost every case when the preposition is compounded with a verb, the last consonant of the preposition is changed into the consonant with which the verb begins; as, *imminet* for *innminet*; *annue* for *adnue*; *officio* for *obficio*; this change is made to make the enunciation easier.

Nox praelio intervēnit.  
 Omnes occubuērunt morti.  
 Ego meis majoribus<sup>1</sup> praeluxi.  
 Vir bonus succurrit misēris.  
 Supervēnit timīdis juvenībus.  
 Nemo enim altēri imperium volens concēdit.

*English Examples.*

Man excels all other animals.	Homo omnis cæter animal antecēdo.
Mars presides over arms.	Mars arma præsideo.
During the conspiracy of Catiline, great danger impended over Cicero.	In Catilina conjuratio magnus pericūlum Cicēro impendeo.
Ariovistus interdicted the Romans from all Gaul.	Ariovistus omnis Gallia ( <i>abl.</i> ) Romānus interdīco.
Cæsar resolved to forbear fighting.	Cæsar praelium supersedeo ( <i>inf.</i> ) statuo.

*Observation Fifth.* Verbs govern the dative which signify to *profit* or *hurt*; to *favour* or *assist*; to *command* and *obey*; to *serve* and *resist*; to *threaten* and to be *angry*; to *trust*.

*Latin Examples.*

Prospexit ejus salūti.	Rogo ut faveas mihi.
Nihil officiat <sup>2</sup> frugībus.	Mihi minabītur.
Bonus ejus amīcis succurret.	Fidit narratiōni.
Socrātes imperāvit cupiditatībus.	
Ille mihi succensuit sine causa.	

<sup>1</sup> *Majoribus* here means *ancestors*: those who have gone *before* us.

<sup>2</sup> See note 3, on the preceding page. This is the subjunctive in the sense of the imperative. Use, therefore, the sign *let*.

Multi Romanōrum Catilinæ inceptis favēbant.  
 Helōtes<sup>1</sup> Spartānis famulāti sunt.  
 Dii hominībus succensuērunt. Rura mihi placent.  
 Misēris succurrēre disce.

*English Examples.*

No man can serve virtue and pleasure at the same time.	Voluptas simul et virtus nemo servio <sup>2</sup> possum.
I do not envy the fortune of any one.	Non ullus fortūna invideo.
The shades hurt the corn.	Umbra fruges noceo.
He displeased me the least.	Ego minime ille displiceo.
Whoever spares the bad hurts the good.	Ille bonus noceo qui malus parco.
Confide in virtue, but dis- trust vice.	Confido virtus, sed diffido vitium.
A good boy will obey his pa- rents.	Bonus puer is parens pareo.
It is the part of a master to command his servant, but of a servant to obey his master.	Est magister is servus im- pēro, sed servus magister servio.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

**RULE XVIII.** An active Verb, or a Vero  
signifying actively, governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum,  
love God.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Helots were a people whom the Spartans held in slavery, and  
 treated with great cruelty.

<sup>2</sup> Use the infinitive.



*Latin Examples.*

Beneficia parant amicos.	Deus mundum creavit
Romulus Romam fundavit.	Virtus largitur tranquillitatem
Cæsar Pompeium vicit.	Labor omnia vincit.
Omnes amant aurum.	Honor artes alit.

Scipio delēvit Carthagīnem.  
 Sol diem,<sup>1</sup> sed luna noctem regit.  
 Mors subīta Achillem fortem exstinxit.  
 Doctrīna vitam suavem efficit.  
 Tuam diligentiam omnes admirantur.  
 Romāni omnes gentes vicērunt.

*English Examples.*

Alexander <sup>2</sup> vanquished Darius.	Alexander Darius vinco.
Hannibal <sup>3</sup> conquered Italy.	Hannibal Italia vinco.
Fortune favours the brave.	Audax fortuna juvo.
One death awaits all men.	Unus mors omnis maneo.
Egypt produces crocodiles.	Ægyptus crocodilus gigno.
A wise son maketh a glad father.	Filius sapiens lætus pater facio.
All nations acknowledge a God.	Omnis natio Deus agnosco.
Despise pleasures.	Voluptas contemno.
The Egyptians worship animals.	Ægyptius animal colo.
A good boy loves his book.	Bonus puer is liber amo.
Ninus founded the Assyrian empire.	Ninus imperium Assyrius fundo.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Regit* is here understood to govern *diem*.

<sup>2</sup> Alexander was a renowned Grecian general.

<sup>3</sup> Hannibal was the great Carthaginian general who led his victorious armies near the very gates of Rome.

Cyrus founded the Persian empire.      Cyrus imperium Persicus fundo.

Romulus founded the Roman empire.      Romulus Romanus imperium fundo.

**RULE XIX.** *Recordor, memini, reminiscor,* and *obliscor*, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

*Recordor* lectionis or lectionem,  
*I remember*      *the lesson.*

*Latin Examples.*

Vir bonus omnium injuriarum oblivisceretur.

Habes ducem sui oblitos.

Recordor tua consilia et benevolentiam.

Memini tuæ constantiæ.

Reminiscor veteris incommodi Romanorum.

Cæsar solet nihil oblivisci, nisi injurias.

<sup>1</sup> Ut<sup>3</sup> verba parentis<sup>8</sup> et vocem<sup>4</sup> Anchisæ<sup>5</sup> magni vultumque<sup>9</sup>  
<sup>7</sup>      <sup>6</sup>  
<sup>2</sup> recordor!

*English Examples.*

Remember that time.

Reminiscor ille tempus.

I have not forgotten to give to him the letters.

Non obliviscor is (*dat.*) epistolam do.<sup>2</sup>

I recollect his countenance.

Reminiscor is vultus.

I remember your past kindnesses, and am grateful.

Memini tuos præteritus beneficium, (*plu.*) et gratus sum.

I remember, nor shall I ever forget that night.

Memini, nec ille nox obliviscor.

God himself commands you to remember death.

Tu (*acc.*) memini (*perf. inf.*) mors, Deus ipse jubeo.

<sup>1</sup> Ut 'how.'

<sup>2</sup> Infinitive.

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

**RULE XX.** Verbs of *plenty* and *scarceness* for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,      Caret omni culpâ,  
*he abounds in riches.      he is free from all fault.*

*Latin Examples.*

Sicilia affluit frumento.      Pomis exuberat annus.  
 Urbs peste caret.      Consilio non eges.  
 Majores nostri neque consilii neque audaciæ unquam eguere.  
 Non tam artis indigent,<sup>1</sup> quàm labōris.  
 Hoc bellum indiget celeritātis.

*English Examples.*

Many bad men <sup>2</sup> abound in gold and silver.	Multus malus aurum et ar- gentum abundo.
He who <sup>3</sup> is destitute of vir- tue, wants all things.	Qui virtus careo, omnis ( <i>gen.</i> ) indigeo.
The time does not need such aid.	Tempus talis auxilium non egeo.
You shall not want my pray- ers.	Meus precis non egeo.
One wants a bridle, another <sup>4</sup> a spur.	Alter frænum, alter calcar egeo.
Show that death is free from all evil.	Ostendo mors ( <i>acc.</i> ) omnis malum careo. ( <i>inf.</i> )

<sup>1</sup> *Indigeo* frequently governs the genitive.

<sup>2</sup> *Bad men*, to be rendered by *mali*, having *homīnes* understood

<sup>3</sup> *He who*, to be rendered by *qui*, with *ille* understood.

<sup>4</sup> One—another, *alter—alter*.

**RULE XXI.** *Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor,* govern the ablative ; as,

Utītur fraude,  
*he uses deceit.*

Abutītur libris,  
*he abuses books.*

*Latin Examples.*

*Nil* usus est his verbis.

Utēre tuo iudicio.

Quousque tandem abutēre,<sup>1</sup> Catilīna, nostrā patientiā.

Vitā eternā boni fruuntur.

Vel imperatōre vel milite me utimīni.

Epaminondas fortis militis officio functus est.

Stultus puer libris abutītur.

Dii nec escis aut potionibus vescuntur.

Scythæ lacte et melle vescuntur ; lanæ usus iis<sup>2</sup> ignōtus est,  
sed pellibus ferinis utuntur.

*English Examples.*

**I** will discharge the duty of Interpreter munus fungor.  
an interpreter.

**A** wise man makes use of<sup>3</sup> Sapiens ratio utor.  
reason.

**A** contented man enjoys life. Contentus vita fruor.

**Do not** abuse my patience. Meus patientia non abūtor.

**Cræsus** possessed great Cræsus magnus divitiæ potior.  
wealth.

<sup>1</sup> *Abutēre* is found in the 2d person singular, future tense.

<sup>2</sup> Governed by *ignōtus* by rule 12th.

<sup>3</sup> *Makes use of*—utītur.

## 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. *Verbs governing two Datives.*

**RULE XXII.** *Sum* used instead of *affero*, (which means to *bring*,) governs two datives, the one dative of a person, and the other dative of the thing; as,

Est mihi voluptāti,

*it is to me for pleasure, that is, it brings pleasure to me.*

*Latin Examples.*

Est honōri tibi.

Uvæ vitibus decōri sunt.

Ego sum curæ tuo negotio.

Lupus est exitio pecōri.

Vitis arboribus decōri est.

Exitio nautis avidis est mare.

Bonus puer est honōri ejus parentibus.

Amīcus amīco solamīni est.

<sup>1</sup>  
Cibus illis adversum famem atque sitim, non lubidīni neque  
<sup>2</sup>  
luxuriæ erat.

Multis corpus est voluptāti, anima onēri.

*English Examples.*

He was an example<sup>1</sup> to many. Ille multus exemplum sum.

He was of great use<sup>2</sup> to me. Ille ego usus magnus sum.

He commanded them to supply corn, which would be necessary for the war. Impēro comparto frumentum, quod usus sum bellum.

All the cattle was the plunder of the soldiers. Pecus omnis miles præda sum.

<sup>1</sup> *An example, to be put in the dative.*

<sup>2</sup> *Of great use, that is, for great use ; use the dative.*

Let your brother be an ex- ample to you.	Tuus frater tu exemplum sum. ( <i>subj. pres.</i> )
Knowledge will always bring both profit and pleasure to you.	Scientia tu usus atque vo- luptas semper sum.

2. *Verbs governing the Accusative and Genitive.*

**RULE XXIII.** Verbs of accusing, condemn-  
ing, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the  
accusative of a person with the genitive of a  
thing; as,

Arguit me furti,  
*he accuses me of theft.*

*Latin Examples.*

Meipsum inertiae condemno. Monet me officii.  
Illum homicidii absolvunt. Cicero Verrem furti accusavit.  
Judex absolvit injuriarum eum.  
Morbus debet monere te mortis.  
Senatus liberavit regem ejus culpæ.  
Athenienses Socratem<sup>1</sup> impietatis male accusaverunt.  
Romanus Senatus Catilinam pessimorum facinorum con-  
demnavit.

*English Examples.*

He condemns his son-in-law of wickedness.	Scelus condemno gener suus.
The death of a friend warns us of our own death.	Mors amicus ego ( <i>acc. plur.</i> ) mors noster moneo.

---

<sup>1</sup> Socrates was one of the greatest philosophers in Greece. See an  
account of his life and death in the Classical Dictionary.

The judges condemned him of murder.	Judex is homicidium con- demno.
Adversity <sup>1</sup> reminds men of religion.	Res adversus homo religio admoneo.
Sickness will remind you of death.	Morbus tu mors admoneo.
Accuse no one of a crime until you have heard his defence.	Nemo crimen accūso, prius quam is defensio audio.

**RULE XXIV.** Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihīli* ; as,

*Æstīmo te magni,*<sup>2</sup>  
*I value you much.*

*Latin Examples.*

Avārus æstīmat pecuniam magni.  
Virtūtem maxīmi duce.  
Divitias absque doctrinā nihīli puta.  
Stultus divitias,<sup>3</sup> sapiens virtūtem maxīmi æstīmat  
Fortūnam minīmi, honestātem maxīmi pende.  
Epicūrus voluptātem magni æstimāvit, sed nulla possessio  
pluris æstimanda est quā virtus.  
Sapiens facit voluptātem minīmi, et æstīmat nullam pos-  
sessiōnem pluris quā virtūtem.

<sup>1</sup> *Adversity*—res adversæ, *adverse things* ; and then of course the verb should be put in the plural.

<sup>2</sup> There is always some substantive understood in this elliptical or short form of expression ; as, *æstīmo te magni*, that is,

*Æstīmo te esse homīnem magni pretii,*

*I esteem you to be a man of great price or value.*

<sup>3</sup> *Æstīmat* is understood to the first part of this sentence.

*English Examples.*

He valued money greatly. <sup>1</sup>	Divitiæ magnus æstimo
Brave men value threats as nothing.	Fortis minæ nihil puto.
A wise man values reputation more than riches.	Sapiens fama plus quàm divitiæ æstimo.
A fool values money more than learning.	Stultus pecunia plus quam doctrina facio.
A pious man esteems religion of the greatest consequence. <sup>2</sup>	Pius vir religio magnus æstimo.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative and Dative.*

RULE XXV.<sup>3</sup> Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compāro Virgilium Homēro, Eripuit me morti,<sup>4</sup>  
*I compare Virgil to Homer. he rescued me from death.*

*Latin Examples.*

Suum <sup>5</sup> cuique tribuīto.	Narras fabulam surdo. <sup>6</sup>
Legam lectionem tibi.	Religio morti <sup>4</sup> timorem aufert.

<sup>1</sup> *Greatly*, to be rendered by *magni*.

<sup>2</sup> *Of the greatest consequence*—*maximi*.

<sup>3</sup> This rule may be better expressed in more general terms—*Any active verb may govern the accusative and dative, when both the object is expressed, and the person or thing upon which the object is exerted.*

<sup>4</sup> Verbs which signify to take away, have the sign *from* with the dative.

<sup>5</sup> *Negotium*, *thing*, is here understood.

<sup>6</sup> *Homini* is here understood.



Puëro studiōso magister premium donābit.  
 Sæpe conferimus parva magnis.  
 Ille mihi responsum dedit.  
 Hannībal ejus militibus verba fecit præ Cannārum prælium.  
 Vita nihil mortalibus donat sine magnā opĕrā.  
 Fortūna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.

*English Examples.*

Take from me this grief.	Eripio ego ( <i>dat.</i> ) hic dolor.
Show me <sup>1</sup> your letter.	Vester epistōla ego ( <i>dat.</i> ) ostendo.
Temperance brings peace to the mind.	Temperantia animus pax fero.
Solon gave laws to the Athenians, Lycurgus to the Spartans, and Numa to the Romans.	Solon Athenienses, Lycurgus Lacedemonii, atque Numa Romāni lex do.
Pay me the money.	Pecunia ego solvo.
The laws of Lycurgus bring up youth to labour.	Lycurgus lex adolescens ( <i>plur.</i> ) labor edūco.
A covetous man acquires riches for others, not for himself.	Avārus alius, non sui divitiæ paro.

4. *Verbs governing two Accusatives.*

**RULE XXVI.** Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus pacem te,  
*we beg peace of thee.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Show me, that is, show to me.

*Latin Examples.*

Docuit me grammaticam. Rogo te hoc beneficium.  
 Rogo te hanc veniam. Geographiam pueros docemus.  
 Plato ejus discipulos philosophiam erudiit.  
 Columbæ accipitrem rogavērunt, ut eas defendēret.<sup>1</sup>  
 Is me rogāvit meam sententiam de hāc lege.  
 Posce Deos animum fortem et carentem terrōre<sup>2</sup> mortis.  
 Sapiens docēbit ejus filios justitiam, frugalitatem, temperan-  
 tiam, atque fortitudinem.

*English Examples.*

I instructed you in the libe- ral arts.	Doceo tu liberālis ars
Ask of God sound reason, health of mind, and next of body.	Deus posco bonus ratio, mens, et deinde corpus valetūdo.
All beg peace of you.	Omnis pax tu posco.
Ask pardon of thy father.	Rogo tuus pater venia.
Minerva instructed Telema- chus in the laws and pre- cepts of war.	Minerva Telemāchus erudio lex et præceptum bellum.
When will you teach me music?	Quum ego musīca doceo?
Poverty teaches a man many things.	Multus homo paupertas do- ceo.

<sup>1</sup> *Ut eas defendēret*, is here a whole sentence, put for the accusa-  
tive of the thing. They asked him—what?—*ut eas defendēret*.

<sup>2</sup> *Terrōre* is governed by *carentem* by rule 20th, which see

5. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.*

**RULE XXVII.** Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative ; as,

Onērat naves auro,  
*he loads the ships with gold.*

*Latin Examples.*

Magno metu me liberābis. Implēvit mero patēram.  
 Solvite<sup>1</sup> vestra corda metu. Milites tegunt capita galeis.  
 Nudavit aciem equestri auxilio.  
 Me oculis spoliaverunt.  
 Natura vestit oculos membranis tenuissimis.  
 Somnus nos omnibus sensibus orbat.

*English Examples.*

They load the altars with	Ara multus donum onero.
many offerings.	
He bound Gaul in chains.	Vincio catēna Gallia.
He deprived his father of	Is ( <i>gen.</i> ) pater vita privo.
life.	
Youth clothes our cheeks	Juventus gena flos vestio.
with bloom.	
Formerly they crowned vic-	Olim corōno victor olīva, et
tors with olive, and encir-	is ( <i>gen. plur.</i> ) tempōra
led their temples with	laurus cingo.
laurel.	
This new philosophy de-	Hic novus philosophia ego
prives us of rest.	quies privo.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Solvite*, loose, discharge, free.

Sylla filled Rome with blood    Sylla Roma sanguis et cædes  
and slaughter.    impleo.  
Go out of the city, Catiline,    Egredior ex urbs, Catilina, et  
and free the common-    libéro respublica metus.  
wealth from fear.

#### THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

**RULE XXVIII.** When a Verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case;<sup>1</sup> as,

##### *By the Active Verb.*

Accusat me furti,  
*he accuses me of theft.*

Docet me grammaticam,  
*he teaches me grammar.*

Compāro Virgilium Homēro,  
*I compare Virgil to Homer.*

##### *By the Passive Verb.*

Accusor furti,  
*I am accused of theft.*

Doceor grammaticam,  
*I am taught grammar.*

Virgilius comparātur Homēro,  
*Virgil is compared to Homer.*

##### *Latin Examples.*

- |                    |   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| <i>By Rule 23.</i> | { | Damnātus est ambītus. Milo damnātus est              |
|                    |   | homicidii.   |
| <i>By Rule 24.</i> | { | Absolūtus est majestātis. Monētur ejus               |
|                    |   | officii.   |
| <i>By Rule 25.</i> | { | Existimātur magni. Aurum habētur maxīmi.             |
| <i>By Rule 25.</i> | { | Res nunciātur hostībūs. Parva <sup>2</sup> conferun- |
|                    |   | tur magnis. Mors recte comparātur somno.             |
|                    |   | Puella nobis eripitur. Cicēro comparātur             |
|                    |   | Demosthēni.  |

<sup>1</sup> The *accusative* after an *active* verb, always becomes its *nominative*, when the verb is changed to the *passive* form; while the other case is retained.

<sup>2</sup> *Negotia*, understood, *small things*

- By Rule 26. { Is rogātus est ejus sententiam. Johannes  
 { docētur grammaticam.  
 By Rule 27. { Navis auro onerātur. Solvitur catēnis.  
 { Opprimitur ære aliēno.<sup>1</sup> Privātus est ejus vitā.

*English Examples.*

He was accused of this crime,	Accūso hic crimen, sed ju-
but acquitted by the votes	dex absolvo sententia.
of his judges.	
Virtue is justly esteemed of	Virtus justè magnus ( <i>super.</i> )
the greatest value.	æstimo.
Let not money be compared	Divitiæ non fama compāro.
to reputation.	( <i>pres. sub. pass.</i> )
The youth is taught Greek.	Puer Græcus litēræ doceo.
Cethēgus, having been con-	Cethēgus, proditio <sup>2</sup> condem-
demned of treason, was	no, is vita privo.
deprived of his life.	

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**RULE XXIX.** An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

Expēdit reipublicæ,  
*it is profitable for the state.*

*Latin Examples.*

Licet nemīni peccāre.<sup>3</sup> Accīdit mihi præter<sup>4</sup> opiniōnem.

<sup>1</sup> *Æs* originally meant *copper*, and therefore used for *money*: hence *æs aliēnum*, which literally means *another man's copper*, means also *debt*; as when one man is in debt to another, he has *another man's money*.

<sup>2</sup> To be put in the genitive, by Rule 23d.

<sup>3</sup> The infinitive is governed by *licet*, by Rule 30th

<sup>4</sup> See Prepositions, page 99.

Conducit salutē vivere e naturā, et nobis expedit ita vivere.

Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.<sup>1</sup>

Libet mihi expatiari.

Non libet mihi deplorare vitam.

Præstat philosophis tacere, quàm loqui.

*English Examples.*

It is evident to me that God<sup>2</sup> governs the world.      Constat ego Deus mundus gubernare.

It was manifest to all that he aimed at the sovereignty.      Omnis patet is imperium peto.

It is better to die than to live in slavery.      Præstat morior quàm in servitute vivo.

It appears to me that he is a bad man.      Videtur ego is malus sum. (inf.)

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

**RULE XXX.** One Verb governs another in the Infinitive ; as,

Cupio discere,  
*I desire to learn.*

<sup>1</sup> *Rempublicam*—the accusative before the infinitive *esse*, by Rule 4.

<sup>2</sup> *That God*—*Deum*—the accusative before the infinitive of the verb.

*Latin Examples.*

Non possum<sup>1</sup> dormire. Omnes volunt vivere beātē.  
 Urbes non possunt nec ædificāri nec frequentāri sine cætū  
 homīnum.

Potes dicēre nihil verum.

<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>  
 Omne negotium effugēre cupīvit.

<sup>1</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
 Jam nihil de republicā cogitāre statui.

<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>3</sup>  
 Romæ<sup>2</sup> elephantēs per funes incedēre docebantur.

Nemo potest esse beātus sine virtūte.

Malum librum laudāre non possum.

<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>  
 Illecēbras voluptātis vitāre debēmus.

<sup>1</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
 Non omnes homīnes amāre parīter possūmus.

*English Examples.*

Learn to live, and learn to die. Disco vivo, et disco morior.

I love to study, because I wish to learn. Amo studeo, quia volo disco

Who is able to know all things? Qui omnis nosco possum?

<sup>1</sup> Possum is an irregular verb ; (see Appendix.)

<sup>2</sup> Romæ, at Rome, the genitive of *place where*; see Rule 47th.

Do you love to walk ?	Amo tu ambūlo ?
Good men hate to sin.	Bonus odi pecco.
Learn to bear well a great fortune.	Disco bene fero magnus fortūna.
Thespis is said to have invented Tragedy.	Thespis dico Tragædia invenio.
Nothing can imitate the skill of nature.	Nihil possum natūra solertia imītor.
Remember to preserve an equal mind <sup>1</sup> in difficult circumstances.	Memīni in res adversus æquanimitas conservo.

#### THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

**RULE XXXI.** Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs;<sup>2</sup> as,

Amans virtūtem,  
*loving virtue.*

#### *Latin Examples*

<sup>3</sup> Regni rerumque oblīti sunt.

Legāti venērunt questum<sup>3</sup> injurias, et ex fœdère res<sup>4</sup> repetitum.

Nauta, tenens gubernaculum, navim regit.

<sup>1</sup> *An equal mind*, to be rendered by the accusative of *æquanimitas*, equanimity.

<sup>2</sup> That is, if the verb govern the *accusative*, the participle, gerund, or supine derived from it, governs the *accusative*; if the verb govern the *dative*, the participle governs the *dative*; and so on.

<sup>3</sup> *Questum* comes from *queror*.

<sup>4</sup> *Res*, here means *property*; for the meaning of *ex* see page 100, second definition.



Mors est anteponenda<sup>1</sup> dedecōri.

Julius Cæsar functus<sup>2</sup> consulātu, Galliam provinciam sorte obtinuit.

Ille carens<sup>3</sup> fraude, ab omnibus amātus est.

Consilium Lacedæmōnem occupandi cepērunt.

Antonius vestem Cæsāris sanguinolentam ostentans, popū lum adversus conjurātos inflammāvit.

*English Examples.*

Stretching both his hands to- wards heaven.	Tendo duplex manus ad cœ- lum.
We sent to inquire <sup>4</sup> of his health.	Mitto quæro is valetūdo ( <i>acc.</i> )
An army pursuing the ene- my, fights with darts.	Exercitus hostis sequor, cum sagitta pugno.
Admonishing me of my duty, he departed.	Ego officium admoneo, abeo
Loaded with chains he was cast into prison.	Catēna onēro, ( <i>perf. part.</i> ) in carcer jacto.
By using deceit he was de- spised.	Fraus utor, ( <i>ger. abl.</i> ) con- temno.
Nor have I any hope of see- ing my ancient country, nor my pleasing children, and my much beloved sire.	Non ego ( <i>dat.</i> ) ullus spes vi- deo ( <i>ger. gen.</i> ) patria antī quus, nec dulcis natus, ex optatusque parens.

<sup>1</sup> See Rules 25 and 28.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule 21st.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule 20th.

<sup>4</sup> Let *to inquire* be translated by the supine.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

**RULE XXXII.** Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns ; as,

Studendum est mihi,  
*studying is to me ; or, I must study.*  
 Tempus studendi,      Aptus studendo,  
*time of study.      fit for studying.*

**Observation First.** The Gerund in *DUM*, of the nominative case, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.<sup>1</sup>

### *Latin Examples.*

**Etiam post malam messem serendum est.**

**Omnibus moriendum est.**

**Semper nobis pugnandum est contra cupiditātes.**

**Nobis orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.**

**Vivendum est mihi rectè.**

<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>5</sup>  
**Is vigilandum est, qui gubernaculum patriæ sibi deposcunt.**

Videndum est igitur, ut eâ liberalitate utâmur, quæ prosit amīcis, et noceat nemīni.

**English Examples.**

I must govern my tongue.      Lingua (*dat.*) modēror sum  
ego. (*dat.*)

**We must deliberate.**      **Ego (*dat. plur.*) delibēro sum.**

We must take care also lest the punishment be greater than the crime.

Caveo sum etiam, ne pœna magnus quàm culpa sum.  
(*sub. pr.*)

<sup>1</sup> This gerund always implies *obligation* or *necessity*, and very often the dative is understood ; as, *serendum est, it must be sowed*, that is, *nobis by us*, or, *omnibus, by all*.

We should take care that the      *Efficio sum, ut appetitus ra-*  
 appetites be obedient to      *tio*<sup>1</sup> *obedio.*  
 reason.

*Observation Second.* The gerund in *DI*, of the genitive case, is governed by substantives or adjectives

*Latin Examples.*

<sup>4</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
*Plurīmæ sunt illecēbræ peccandi.*  
*Artem scribendi Phœnīces invenērunt.*  
*Artem acu pingendi*<sup>2</sup> *Phryges invenērunt.*  
*Honestissīma est contentio beneficiis beneficia vincendi.*  
*Cæsar equitandi*<sup>3</sup> *peritissīmus erat.*

*English Examples.*

The lust of power.      *Domīno cupīdo.*  
 We should check<sup>4</sup> that li-      *Refūto iste maledīco licentia.*  
 cense of scandalizing.  
 Milo had no power of stay-      *Milo (dat.) maneo nullus*  
 ing.      *sum facultas.*

*Observation Third.* The gerund in *DO*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness.

*Latin Examples.*

*Charta est utilis scribendo.*  
*Hic exercītus aptus est gerendo bellum.*  
*Cæsar impērat omnes naves aptas pugnando collīgi.*

<sup>1</sup> See Rule 17, Obs. 5th.

<sup>2</sup> *Pingendi acu, of painting with the needle, that is, of working figures upon cloth.*

<sup>3</sup> For the government of *equitandi* by *peritissīmus*, see Rule 10th.

<sup>4</sup> We should check, *refutarēmus.*

*English Examples.*

Seed is useful for sowing.      Semen utilis sum sero.  
 He is not fit for commanding      Ille non sum aptus exercitus  
     the army.      (dat.) impĕro.  
 This water is not fit for      Hic aqua non sum aptus bibo.  
     drinking.

*Observation Fourth.* The gerund in *DUM*, of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*.

*Latin Examples.*

Promptus ad audiendum.      Attentus inter docendum.  
<sup>2</sup>      <sup>3</sup>      <sup>4</sup>      <sup>1</sup>      <sup>7</sup>      <sup>8</sup>      <sup>6</sup>  
 Catōnis erga fratrem benevolentia ad imitandum propo-  
     <sup>5</sup>  
     nenda est.  
 Tempus anni ad gerendum bellum deficit.  
 Cæsar arbitrātus tempus esse aliĕnum ad committendum  
     prœlium, continuit se suo loco.

*English Examples.*

He is artful in persuading.      Ille astūtus ad persuadeo.  
 The short time of our exist-      Brevis tempus ætas satīs sum  
     ence is long enough to live      longus ad benè vivo.  
     well.

*Observation Fifth.* The gerund in *DO*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; or if there be no preposition, it is governed as the ablative of *cause*, *manner*, or *instrument*. See Rule 46.

*Latin Examples.*

Pœna a peccando absterret. Defessus sum ambulando.

<sup>1</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>3</sup>  
Simiæ catûlos sæpe complectendo necant.

Amicus semper amicum juvabit consolando.

Plurîmi, in suadendo, audâces ; sed in ipso pericûlo timîdi sunt.

*English Examples.*

Idle persons are soon discouraged from learning. Ignâvus a disco cito deterreo.

It is not my design to spend my life in cultivating land or in hunting. Non meus consilium sum ago vita ager colo aut venor.

The mind of man is nourished by learning and thinking. Homo mens disco alo et cogito.

*Gerunds turned into Participles in dus.*

**RULE XXXVI.<sup>1</sup>** Gerunds governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case ; as,

*By the Gerund.**By the Participle.*

<sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
Petendum est mihi pacem,  
*seeking is to me peace.*  
Tempus petendi pacem,  
*time of seeking peace.*

Pax est petenda mihi,  
*peace is to be sought by me.*  
Tempus pacis petendæ,  
*time of peace to be sought.*

---

<sup>1</sup> This rule is numbered 36, to correspond to the number in Adam's Grammar.

*Latin Examples.*

Cæsar morâtur in his locis causâ<sup>1</sup> parandârum navium.

Non habēbat facultātem<sup>2</sup> gerendi belli.

Omnes civitatēs pecuniam dededērunt ad classes ædificandas, exercitusque comparandos.

Imperâtor existimābat octoginta naves esse satīs ad transportandas duas legiōnes.

Barbāri suis,<sup>3</sup> quanta prædæ faciendæ facultas<sup>4</sup> darētur,  
<sup>9</sup> si Romānos castris expulissent demonstravērunt.

*English Examples.*

You, now, soldiers, have an Nunc, miles, opportunitas  
 opportunity of trying your habeo virtus probo.  
 courage.<sup>5</sup>

There was a design of de- Consilium sum urbs deleo, et  
 destroying the city, and of civis interficio.  
 murdering the citizens.

That boy is fit for sustaining Hic puer aptus sum labor  
 labour. toléro.

All the cities of Greece gave Omnis civitas Græcia do pe-  
 money for building<sup>6</sup> a cunia ad classis ædifico.  
 fleet.

<sup>1</sup> *Causâ* is put in the ablative, by Rule 49th, which see.

<sup>2</sup> *Facultātem* here signifies *the means, the resources*.

<sup>3</sup> *Suis* agrees with *hominibus* understood.

<sup>4</sup> *Facultas*, here means *opportunity*.

<sup>5</sup> *Of trying your courage*, to be rendered by the genitive of *probanda virtus*.

<sup>6</sup> *For building*, ad ædificandam.

Some men use more care in      Quidam magnus studium  
 procuring horses than in      utor in equus paro, quam  
 choosing their friends.      in amicus seligo.

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

#### 1. *The Supine in um.*

**RULE XXXVII.** The Supine in *um* is put  
 after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit      deambulātum.  
*he hath gone to walk.*

#### *Latin Examples.*

Venimus huc quæsītum oracūla.

<sup>3</sup> Me ultro <sup>4</sup> accusātum <sup>2</sup> advēnit. <sup>1</sup>

Scitātum oracūla Phœbi mittimus.

Imperātor duxit cohortes prædātum.

Legātos ad Cæsārem mittunt, rogātum auxilium.

Nunc venis irrīsūm domīnum ?

Venit orātum opem.

Vos ultum injurias hortor.

#### *English Examples.*

He went to fish.

Abeo piscor.

He came to ask pardon of Cæsar.

Venio oro venia Cæsar.

Cæsar.<sup>1</sup>

The army was sent to lay  
 waste the Roman territory.

Exercitus mitto Romānus  
 ager vasto.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Of Cæsar*, should be rendered by the accusative, according to Rule 26th.

They came to my house to salute me. Venio ad meus domus ego salūto.

They go to destroy all good men. Omnis bonus perdo eo.

## 2. The Supine in u.

**RULE XXXVIII.** The Supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun ; as,

Facile dictu,  
*easy to tell, or to be told.*

### Latin Examples.

Prodigium est mirabile visu.

Ista<sup>1</sup> lepida sunt memoratu.

Horatius ferè solus lectu dignus.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>8</sup> <sup>9</sup>  
Nihil<sup>3</sup> dictu fœdum, visûque, hæc limina tangat, intra quæ  
<sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup>  
est puer.

<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus.

Sed incredibile dictu est, quantum civitas brevi crevit.

### English Examples.

The thing is horrible to relate. Res horrendus reféro.

It is wonderful to tell how much he accomplished by diligence. Mirabilis sum dico quantum diligentia (*abl.*) facio.

<sup>1</sup> *Ista*, 'those things.'

<sup>2</sup> *Est* is to be supplied.

<sup>3</sup> *Nihil* is the nominative to *tangat*, which is in the subjunctive mode, present tense, and is used here, as is often the case, for the imperative mode ; as, puer legat, *let the boy read*, for, puer legito : therefore in construing *nihil*, say, *let nothing*.



It is easy to tell that idleness<sup>1</sup> will produce misery.      Facilis dico ignavia miseria gigno.  
 It is difficult to find a true friend.      Difficilis sum invenio amicus verus.  
 This is lawful to be spoken.      Hic fas sum dico.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

### 1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

**RULE XXXIX.** Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs ; as,

Benè scribit,      Fortiter pugnans,  
*well he writes. bravely fighting.*

### *Latin Examples.*

<sup>1</sup> Xantippe, <sup>3</sup> Socrätis uxor, <sup>2</sup> morösa <sup>7</sup> admödum <sup>6</sup> fuisse <sup>5</sup> fertur. <sup>4</sup>

Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto<sup>2</sup> latent.

<sup>4</sup> Diutius <sup>7</sup> noströrum <sup>8</sup> militum <sup>6</sup> impetum <sup>1</sup> hostes <sup>5</sup> ferre <sup>2</sup> non potuerunt, ac <sup>3</sup> terga <sup>9</sup> vertörunt. <sup>11</sup> <sup>10</sup>

Natio omnis Gallörum admödum dedita est religionibus.

Biduo post, Ariovistus legatos ad Cæsarem mittit.

### *English Examples.*

Cimon quickly came to the greatest eminence.      Cimon celeriter ad principatus pervenio.

He died a few days after.      Ille pauci post dies (*abl. plur.*) morior.

I hoped well, but it happened much otherwise.      Spero bene, sed evenit multo aliter.

<sup>1</sup> *That idleness* ; accusative before the future infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> *Occulto* is here used for a noun, *in secret* ; properly speaking, it agrees with *loco* understood ; in occulto loco, *in a secret place*.

## IV. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

**RULE XL.** Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridiè ejus diēi, Ubique gentium,  
*the day before that day. in every part of nations, or every where.*

*Latin Examples.*

Potentia gloriæque abundè adeptus est.

Te interea loci<sup>1</sup> cognōvi.

Ejus abstinentiæ hoc erit satis testimonii.

Contentio eò<sup>2</sup> vecordia processit, ut studiis civilibus finem faceret.

Credo inesse in arcâ largiter auri et argenti.

Postridie ejus diei mane, milites in expeditionem misit.

*English Examples.*

He came to such a pitch <sup>2</sup> of insolence, that I commanded him to leave me.	Venio eò arrogantia, ( <i>gen.</i> ) ut is ( <i>dat.</i> ) impëro ego de sërô.
--	--

A great abundance <sup>3</sup> of wealth is not necessary for us.	Affätim divitiæ non ego opus sum.
---	-----------------------------------

We have said words enough, <sup>4</sup> (enough of words.)	Dico satis verbum.
--	--------------------

He has enough talk, but little wisdom.	Habeo satis loquentia, sed parum sapientia.
--	---

He had eloquence enough.	Habeo satis eloquentia.
--------------------------	-------------------------

<sup>1</sup> Interea loci, *in the mean time.*

<sup>2</sup> To such a pitch, *eò.*

<sup>3</sup> A great abundance, *affätim.*

<sup>4</sup> Enough, *satis.*

**RULE XLI.** Some derivative Adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; as,

<sup>3</sup>	<sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup>
Omnium	optimè	loquitur,
<i>of all</i>	<i>best</i>	<i>he speaks, or,</i>
<i>he speaks best</i>		<i>of all.</i>

*Latin Examples.*

Ille natūræ convenienter<sup>1</sup> vivit.

Jugurtha sæpe eundo obviam pericūlis, in tantam claritudīnem brevi pervenērat, ut Romānis vehementer carus.

Numantīnis<sup>2</sup> maximo terrōri<sup>2</sup> esset.

Proximè urbi Spartæ Eurōtas fluvius delabītur.

Cicēro optimè<sup>3</sup> omnium Romanōrum locūtus est.

Castra nostra propius urbi movebantur.

*English Examples.*

Miltiades flourished the	Miltiades omnis maxime flo-
greatest of all.	reo.

He staid beyond <sup>4</sup> expecta-	Maneo diutius <sup>4</sup> expectatio.
tion.	

What does he say agreeably	Quid ratio convenienter
to reason ?	dico ?

Part of the standards were	Partim signum ( <i>gen. plur.</i> )
burnt.	uro.

I sent to Athens to meet <sup>5</sup>	Mitto Athenæ ( <i>acc.</i> ) obviam
him.	is. ( <i>dat.</i> )

<sup>1</sup> *Convenienter* ; and *obviam*, in the next sentence ; *proximè*, in the next, and *propius*, in the next but one ; all govern the dative by the force of their primitives, under Rule 12th ; which see.

<sup>2</sup> For the government of these two datives see Rule 22d.

<sup>3</sup> For the primitive of *optimè* see Rule 11th.

<sup>4</sup> *Diutius* governs the ablative by Rule 61.

<sup>5</sup> To meet, *obviam*.

All, in the mean time, run    Omnis, interea locus, ego  
to meet me.                            obviam concurro.

## 2. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

### 1. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

**RULE XLII.** There are thirty-two prepositions which govern the accusative, or have an accusative after them.

[For examples under this rule see pages 98 and 99.]

### 2. *Prepositions governing the Ablative.*

**RULE XLIII.** There are thirteen prepositions which govern the ablative, or have an ablative case after them.

[For examples under this rule see page 100.]

### 3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative and Ablative.*

**RULE XLIV.** The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

*IN*, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative. [See page 101.]

**RULE XLV.** A Preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeāmus scholam,  
*let us go to school.*

*Latin Examples.*

Urbem<sup>1</sup> magnam accedimus.  
Boni puēri scholam adire delectant, et scholā composītē exeunt.  
Mali puēri scholā expelluntor.  
Catilīna, Cicerōne accusātus, urbe evāsīt.  
Igītur Metellus cuncta mœnia<sup>2</sup> exercītu circumvēnit.  
Alīqui vitam silentio transeunt, velūti pecōra.  
At Jugurtha, magnis itinerībūs, Metellum antevēnit.

*English Examples.*

They thrust the ships from the rocks.	Detrūdo navis scopūlus.
Cæsar led <sup>3</sup> all his cavalry over the bridge.	Cæsar omnis equitātus pons tradūco.
I am absent both from my house and the forum.	Absum et meus domus et fo- rum.
He addressed me in these words.	Hic verbum ( <i>abl. plur.</i> ) ego allōquor.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Urbem* is governed by *ad* in the composition of *accedimus*. See note 3, page 129.

<sup>2</sup> This 42d Rule generally takes place when the preposition can be separated from its verb. So in this line—*venit exercītu circum cuncta mœnia*; where *circum* is separated from *venit*.

<sup>3</sup> In English the preposition is generally separated from its verb, and put after it. In this sentence, to follow the Latin manner of speaking, it would be, *Cæsar over led the bridge all his cavalry*.

The fleet is drawn around <sup>1</sup> the citadel.	Classis arx circumvēho.
Being expelled from his coun- try he went to Sicily.	Patria expulsus Sicilia ( <i>acc.</i> ) eo.
By this way he drew over his troops, and came into Italy.	Hic <sup>2</sup> copia tradūco, et in Ita- lia ( <i>acc.</i> ) pervenio.

### 3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

**RULE XLVI.** The Interjections, *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative ; as,

<sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
O vir bonus !  
*O good man !*

*Latin Examples.*

O me perdītum ! O faciem pulchram !  
O meam calamitōsam senectūtem !  
Heu me misērum ! quum tuum anīmum spectāvi.  
<sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
Proh deūm<sup>3</sup> atque homīnum fidem !  
Heu, miserande puer !

*English Examples.*

What an abandoned and im- pudent man !	O ! scelestus atque audax ho- mo ! ( <i>acc.</i> )
O my country ! O Ilium !	O patria ! ( <i>voc.</i> ) O Ilium !
O the detestable meanness of the man !	O fœdītas ( <i>acc.</i> ) homo flagi- tiōsus !
O sacred Jove ! what great- er action was ever per- formed ?	Prô sanctus Jupiter ! ( <i>voc.</i> ) quis magnus res unquam gero ?

<sup>1</sup> Is drawn around, *circumvehitur*.

<sup>2</sup> Put this in the *abl. sing. fem.* to agree with *via* understood.

<sup>3</sup> Deūm, contracted for deōrum.

**RULE XLVII.** *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative ; as,

Hei mihi !	Væ vobis !
<i>ah me !</i>	<i>woe to you !</i>

*Latin Examples.*

Hei mihi ! non possum hoc sine lacrymis commemorare.  
 Hei mihi, qualis erat !<sup>1</sup> quantum mutatus ab illo Hectore  
 qui rediit exuvias<sup>2</sup> indutus Achillis !  
 Væ misero mihi !

*English Examples.*

Alas ! whither am I hurried ? Hei ego ! quò rapio ?  
 Woe to me ! my son has fallen in battle. Væ ego ! meus filius in pugna occumbo.

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.**

**Q.** How many circumstances are there in Latin, expressed in different cases ?

**A.** Five : 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

**1. PRICE.**

**RULE XLVIII.** The price of a thing is put in the ablative ; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,  
*I bought a book for two shillings.*

<sup>1</sup> Qualis erat ! *what was he !* that is, *how he looked !* This refers to Hector, the Trojan general, who was killed by Achilles, and whose body was dragged around the walls of Troy.

<sup>2</sup> *Exuvias* is governed by the preposition *secundum* understood. It refers to the armour of Achilles which Patroclus, another Grecian general, had worn, whom Hector had killed, and in whose armour he had dressed himself, before he himself was killed by Achilles.

*Latin Examples.*

Isocrātes orātor unam oratiōnem viginti talentis vendīdit.  
 Locāvit suam domum centum aureis.  
 Multōrum sanguīne ac vulneribus ea Pœnis victoria stetit.<sup>1</sup>  
 Magno pretio ubique virtus æstimātur.  
 Emi librum duobus assibus.  
 Voluptas empta dolore nocet.  
 Plurimi auro veneunt honores.

*English Examples.*

This man sold his country for gold.	Hic aurum patria vendo.
Demosthenes taught for a talent.	Demosthēnes talentum doceo.
What is not necessary, is dear at a penny.	Quis non sum necessarius, carus sum denarius.
He sold his house for a large sum of money.	Vendo is. domus grandis pecunia.
Life is not to be bought at every price.	Vita non sum emo <sup>2</sup> omnis pretium.

## 2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

**RULE XLIX.** The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative ; as,

Palleo metu,	Fecit suo	more,
<i>I am pale for fear.</i>	<i>he did it in his own way.</i>	

---

<sup>1</sup> Stetit Pœnis, literally, *stood to the Carthagenians* ; as we say of any thing, *it stands us in* so much, when it *costs us* so much : therefore construe it 'costs the Carthagenians.' *Multōrum* agrees with *hominum* or *militum* understood.

<sup>2</sup> Use the future pass. part. fem.



*Latin Examples.*

Percussit eum gladio.

Nortūnus tridente suo terram percussit.

Eurōpa ab Afrīca sejungitur freto Gaditāno.

<sup>1</sup> Plato, <sup>4</sup> discendi cupiditate <sup>3</sup> ductus, <sup>2</sup> Ægyptum<sup>1</sup> <sup>6</sup> peragravit. <sup>5</sup>

Feræ domantur fame atque verberibus.

Crocodilus pelle durissima contra omnes ictus munitur

Elephanti spirant, bibunt, odorantur proboscide.

Dentes usu atteruntur, sed igne non cremantur.

Multi morbi curantur abstinentiâ et quiete.

Deus colitur non corporibus opimis taurorum contrucidatis, .  
non auro, non argento, sed voluntate piâ et rectâ.

Laboribus, consiliis, periculisque Ciceronis, Roma conservata est.

*English Examples.*

Let us always worship God	Semper Deus colo ( <i>pres. sub.</i> )
with a pure mind.	purus animus.

The world was created by	Mundus Deus creo.
God.	

Demosthenes overcame the	Demosthēnes natūra impedi
impediments of nature by	mentum vinco, industria
industry and diligence.	atque diligentia.

The sun shines by his own	Sol suus lux luceo ; luna et
light; the moon and the	planēta sol lumen luceo.
planets shine by the light	
of the sun.	

Rome was founded by Ro-	Roma Romulus fundo.
mulus.	

---

<sup>1</sup> For the government of Ægyptum see Rule 51st.

The manners of men are Mos homo adversitas æquè  
 changed by adversity as ac prosperitas muto.  
 well as by prosperity.  
 We are all drawn by a de- Nos omnis traho laus<sup>1</sup> studi-  
 sire of praise. um.  
 Pompey was conquered by Pompeius Cæsar vinco.  
 Cæsar.

## 3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive ; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative ; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

1. *The place WHERE.*

**RULE L.** When the place *where*, or *in which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the genitive ; as,

Vixit Romæ,  
*he lived at Rome.*

*Latin Examples.*

Quid Romæ faciam ?

Templum Diânæ fuit Ephësi.

Marcus Antonius primus Romæ leōnes ad currum junxit.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Laus*, to be put in the genitive.

Pompeius Thessaliæ a Cæsare fugātus est.

<sup>1</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
Cato sibi Uŭcæ mortem ferro conscivit.

Antonius Actii victus est ab Augusto navāli pugnā claudens  
illustri.

Sappho Lesbī natus est.

Ægypti multa mira sunt et artis et natūræ opēra: inter ea  
quæ manibus hominum facta sunt, pyramides.<sup>1</sup>

### *English Examples.*

Cicero was born at Arpinum.	Cicero Arpinum nascor.
Dionysius taught children at Corinth.	Dionysius Corinthus libēri doceo.
At Sparta old age was most honoured.	Sparta senectus sum honorātus. ( <i>super.</i> )
At Rome were exhibited the most barbarous sports.	Ludus truculentus Roma ostendo.
Hannibal conquered the Roman army at Cannæ.	Hannibal Cannæ exercitus Romānus vinco.
There is a temple of Neptune at Tænārus, which the Greek accounts a most heinous crime to pollute.	Fanum Neptūnus sum Tænārus, qui viōlo nefas puto Græcus.

### *2. The place WHITHER.*

**RULE LI.** When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,  
*he came to Rome.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sunt* understood.

*Latin Examples.*

Deindè Cæsar Pharsålum petiit, ubi Pompeium Pharsalico prælio fudit.

Misérunt Delphos consultum quid facèrent de rebus suis Pompeius victus Pharsaliæ, Alexandriam contendit.

Quum Scipio a Cæsäre victus est, Cato Uticam Africæ urbem petivit.

Cicéro Athēnas petivit, ut Antiöchum philosophum audiret : indè, eloquentiæ gratiâ, Rhodum se contulit, ubi Molone,<sup>1</sup> rhetöre tum disertissimo, magistro usus est.

Alcibiädes clam se a custodibus subduxit, et inde primum Elidem, deinde Thebas venit.

*English Examples.*

Regulus returned to Carthage.      Regulus Carthāgo redeo.

If I dared, I would go to Athens.      Si audeo Athēnæ peto.

I wish to go to Alexandria.      Volo Alexandria eo.

After the battle of Cannæ Hannibal went to Capua.      Post Cannæ pugna, Hannibal Capua contendo.

He led his army to Megära, and immediately after to Corinth.      Is exercitus duco Megära, et postquam Corinthus.

When Themistocles saw that he was not safe enough at Argos, he removed to Corcyra.      Themistöcles, ubi video sui (acc.) non satis tutus sum Argos, Corcýra demigro.

---

<sup>1</sup> Governed by *usus est* : see Rule 21st.

3. *The place WHENCE.*

**RULE LII.** When the place *whence*, or *from which*, or the place *by* or *through which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative ; as,

Discessit Corintho,  
*he departed from Corinth.*

*Latin Examples.*

Pompeius, Syriâ<sup>1</sup> decēdens, quum Rhodum venisset, nobilissimum philosophum Posidonium cupiit audire.

Ænēas Trojâ aufūgit et in Italiam venit.

Cæsar, Galliâ<sup>1</sup> remeans, contra senātus consultum, Romam cum exercitu petiit.

Cyrus ejus exercitum Sarde Babylōnem duxit : Cunaxæ victus et occisus est.

*English Examples.*

Themistocles was banished from Athens.	Themistōcles Athēnæ expello.
---	------------------------------

Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.	Dionysius Plato Athēnæ arcesso.
--	---------------------------------

Clodius suddenly departed from Rome, that he might prepare an ambush for Milo.	Clodius subito Roma discēdo, ut insidiæ Milo paro.
---	--

I received many letters from Rome.	Multus epistōla Roma accipio.
---------------------------------------	-------------------------------

---

<sup>1</sup> The preposition, though generally added to names of countries, is sometimes omitted.

*Domus and Rus.*

**RULE LIII.** *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns ; as,

Manet domi,            Rediit            rure,  
*he stays at home.    he is returned from the country.*

*Latin Examples.*

At nobis est domi<sup>1</sup> inopia ; foris æs aliënum.

Nunc vero est exsul domo,<sup>2</sup> atque omnium honestarum rerum<sup>3</sup> egens.

Allobröges, priusquam domum<sup>4</sup> pergèrent, cum Catilinâ societâtem confirmavêrunt.

Domi industria, foris justum imperium fuit.

*English Examples.*

I will not go from my father's house.    Non eo domus paternus.

A messenger came to him from home.    Nuntius ad is domus venio.

I fear lest my father should return from the country.    Timeo ne meus pater rus redeo.

He came to the house of Pompey early in the morning.    Venio Pompeius domus primus lux. (*abl.*<sup>5</sup>)

He has gone to the country to pass the rest of his life.    Rus proficiscor reliquus vita ago.

<sup>1</sup> In the genitive, by Rule 50. Repeat this Rule first, then the 50th.

<sup>2</sup> In the ablative, by Rule 52.

<sup>3</sup> Governed by *egens*, by Rule 14.

<sup>4</sup> In the accusative, by Rule 51.

<sup>5</sup> See Rule 56.

Good manners prevailed at Bonus mos tunc tempus  
that time, at home. (*gen.*<sup>1</sup>) domus valeo.

**RULE LIV.** To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added ; as,

Natus est in Italiâ,      Rediit      ex Italiâ,  
*he was born in Italy.      he returned from Italy.*

*Latin Examples.*

Transiit per Italiam.

Ab Euröpâ petis Asiam ; ex Asiâ transis in Euröpam.

Iter in Ciliciam faciam per Cappadociam.

Ex Ephëso huc ad meum sodālem litēras misi.

Solon, postquam leges Atheniensibus dedit, in Asiam.

Ægyptumque peregrinātus est : deinde Athēnas rediit.

*English Examples.*

Cæsar marched to farther Gaul.	Cæsar in Gallia ulterior con- tendo.
-----------------------------------	---

I rejoice that you did not go into Britain.	Gaudeo tu ( <i>acc.</i> ) non in Brit- tania proficiscor.
--	--

Hannibal, having marched through Italy, returned to Carthage.	Hannibal quum per Italia in cēdo, Carthāgo redeo.
---	--

Hannibal sent one army into Spain, and left another in Africa.	Hannibal unus exercitus in Hispaniā in Afrīca relinquo
--	--

---

<sup>1</sup>See Rule 40.

## 4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

**RULE LV.** Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,  
*the wall is ten feet high.*

*Latin Examples.*

Abest Italia ab Sardinia centum viginti millia passuum.<sup>1</sup>

Locus est ab urbe decem millia passuum.

Jam mille passus processeram.

Babylōnis muri fuerunt ducentos cubitos<sup>2</sup> alti.

Lavinium distat ab Romā itinēre unius diēi.<sup>3</sup>

Muri Athēnārum ad Piraeum porrecti sunt tria millia passuum in longitudine.

*English Examples.*

I will not go a foot from you.	Non discēdo pes a tu.
The Persian gulf is distant from the Red sea one hundred and fifty miles.	Persicus sinus mare Ruber absum centum et quinquaginta mille passus. ( <i>abl.</i> )
He pitched his camp six miles from the enemy.	Pono castra sex mille passus ab hostis. ( <i>plur.</i> )
Hannibal was three days journey from Tarentum.	Hannibal a Tarentum tres dies ( <i>gen.</i> ) iter. ( <i>acc.</i> )

<sup>1</sup> Governed by *millia*, by Rule 11th. A thousand paces made one mile: ten thousand paces were therefore ten miles.

<sup>2</sup> A cubit was a foot and an half long.

<sup>3</sup> The ancients often reckoned distances by days' journeys.



## 5. TIME.

**RULE LVI.** Time *when* is put in the *ablative*; time *how long* is put in the *accusative* or *ablative*; as,

Venit tertiā horā,  
*he came at the third hour.*

Mansit paucos dies, Abfuit sex mensibus,  
*he stayed a few days. he was away six months.*

*Latin Examples.*

Antiquissimis temporibus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur.

Postero die, procul a castris, hostes in collibus constitērunt.  
Hieme ursi in antris dormiunt.

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Anno decimo quarto postquam in Italiam Hannibal venerat, Scipio consul creatus<sup>1</sup> et in Africam missus est.

Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Cæsarem de pace venērunt.

Nostri milites horas quatuor fortissime pugnāvērunt.

Eodem die ab exploratoribus Cæsar certior factus est hostes sub montem consedissee, millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo.

*English Examples.*

He came at three o'clock. Venio tertius hora.

Hippocrates, a most celebrated physician, lived ninety-nine years. Hippocrātes, medicus celebr, vivo annus undecentum.

The sun shone out on the third day. Tertius dies sol luceo.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Est* is here understood.

He had a house for many years at Rome.	Multus annus is ( <i>dat.</i> ) domus sum Roma.
Rome was built in the seven hundred and fifty-third year before Christ.	Roma condo septingentesimus et quinquagesimus tertius annus ante Christum.
On the next day they removed the camp from that place.	Posterus dies castra ex is locus moveo.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

*Q.* What is a *Compound Sentence*?

*A.* A *Compound Sentence* is that which is made up of two or more simple sentences, and which has more than one nominative, and one verb.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

**RULE LVII.** The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Vir qui,	Fœmīna quæ,	Negotium quod,
<i>the man who.</i>	<i>the woman who.</i>	<i>the thing which.</i>

*Observation First.* If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

*Latin Examples.*

6 5 7 8 1 2 4 3  
 Minor est quàm servus domīnus, qui servos timet.  
 Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges.

Beneficium reddit<sup>1</sup> qui ejus<sup>2</sup> bene memor est.  
 Amo virum qui pauca loquitur.  
 Ego sum Miltiādes, qui Persas vici.  
 Deus, qui noscit corda et cogitationē, punit scelestos,  
 qui ejus praecepta violant, et remunerabit bonos.  
 Cato, qui fuit sapiens, amavit patriam.  
 Illa habet modestiam, quæ est ornatus vitæ.  
 Omnes Romāni senatores convenient, qui promisērunt.

*English Examples.*

God who gives life.	Deus qui do vita.
We love the man who loves God.	Amo vir qui Deus amo.
Men, who neglect religion, will be punished hereafter.	Ille ( <i>nom. plur.</i> ) qui religio negligo, olim punio.
There is a God in the world, who governs all things.	Deus sum in mundus, qui omnis gubernō.
He is braver who conquers himself, than he who conquers the strongest city.	Ille qui sui vinco fortis sum quàm qui urbs munitus expugno.
There are four parts of the world, which are, Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.	Sum mundus quatuor pars, qui sum Eurōpa, Asia, Afrīca, et Amerīca.
The hour which is past cannot return.	Hora qui prætereo ( <i>perf.</i> ) non redeo possum.

*Observation Second.* But when a nominative does come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be in that case, which the verb, or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually governs.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ille* is understood, to which *qui* relates.

<sup>2</sup> For the government of *ejus* by *memor*, see Rule 10th.

*Latin Examples.*

Est Deus quem colimus, cui nullus est similis, cujus<sup>1</sup> munere vivimus, a quo facta sunt omnia.

Urbs, quam Romulus condidit, Roma vocata est.

Est bonus puer quem gloria excitat, et laus delectat.

Sulla mox Romam ingressus est, quam caede<sup>2</sup> et sanguine civium replēvit.

Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decrevit.

Avaritia pecuniæ studium habet, quam nemo sapiens concupivit.

Felices sunt, quorum<sup>3</sup> corda pura sunt.

Legati ab iis venērunt, quorum oratio grata fuit.

Est Deus, cujus<sup>4</sup> numen adorarēmus, cui<sup>5</sup> parerēmus, et a quo conservamur.

Commōda, quibus utimur, lux quā fruimur, spiritus quem ducimus, dantur et impertiuntur nobis a Deo.

*English Examples.*

The mountains which we see. Mons qui video.

The breath which we draw, Spiritus, qui duco, a Deus comes from Heaven. venio.

The city, which Romulus Urbs qui Romulus condo, built, was called Rome. voco Roma.

<sup>1</sup> Cujus, of whom, to be rendered *whose*; as, cujus munere, by *whose bounty*.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule 27th.

<sup>3</sup> Quorum, of whom, to be rendered *whose*: Thus, quorum corda, *whose hearts*. *Wherein*, is equivalent to *in which*; *whereby*, to *by which*; *whereof*, to *of which*; *wherewith*, to *with which*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Governed by *numen*, by Rule 6th.

<sup>5</sup> See Rule 17th, Observation 5th.

Some men hate those things which others love.	Aliquis odi is ( <i>acc. plur neut.</i> ) qui alius amo.
The God whom we adore is the best and the greatest.	Deus, qui colo, bonus et mag- nus sum.
I see Italy, which your an- cestors conquered.	Italia, qui majores vester vin- co, video.
The arrows which they send forth are deadly.	Sagitta, qui emitto, lethalis sum.

#### THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

**RULE LVIII.** The conjunctions, *et, ac, at-  
que, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple  
similar cases and modes ; as,

Honōra patrem et matrem,  
*honour father and mother.*

#### *Latin Examples.*

Gallia posita est inter Pyrenæos montes et Rhenum.

Erant in Pompeio multæ ac magnæ virtutes, ac præcipuè  
admiranda frugalitas.

Nos patriæ fines, et dulcia linquimus arva.

Accipere præstat quàm facere injuriam.

Sapiens est, qui sibi imperiosus ; quem neque paupertas,  
neque mors, neque vincula terrent.

Non census, nec clarum nomen avorum, sed virtus mag-  
nos<sup>1</sup> facit.

Germani vetères non habuerunt urbes mœnibus cinctas,  
aut fossis aggeribusque munitas.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Magnos* agrees with *viros* understood.

*English Examples.*

The winds subside, and the clouds disperse.	Concīdo ventus, fugioque nubes.
Length of time consumes iron and stone.	Vetustas ferrum et lapis ( <i>plur.</i> ) exēdo.
Virtue is esteemed illustrious and immortal.	Virtus æstīmo clarus et immortalis.
Neither wealth, nor power, nor pleasures, render a man happy.	Nec divitiæ, nec potestas, nec voluptas, aliquis beātus facio.
I did not blame your cause, but your plan.	Non res sed consilium reprehendo.
He reached land at day-break, and brought over all the ships safe.	Primus lux <sup>1</sup> terra attingo, omnisque incolumis navis perduco.

**RULE LIX.** Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (*as, et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,  
*Peter and John who are learned.*

*Latin Examples.*

Fames et sitis sunt molestæ.

Demosthēnes et Cicēro oratōres præstantissīmi fuērunt.

Rhenus Rhodanusque Eurōpæ amnes sunt maxīmi.

<sup>3</sup> Græciæ civitatēs clarissimæ fuērunt <sup>4</sup> Athēnæ <sup>5</sup> atque <sup>6</sup> Lacedæmon. <sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ablative by Rule 56th, which see.

Lupus et agnus, siti<sup>1</sup> compulsi, ad rivum eundem venērunt.  
Clarissīmi amnes Italiæ sunt Padus et Tibēris.

Menelāus et Paris armāti pugnāvērunt propter Helēnam et divitias.

*English Examples.*

The master and the scholar    Magister et discipūlus stu-  
study.                                    deo.

Homer and Milton were    Homērus et Milton cæcus  
blind.                                    sum.

Alexander and Julius Cæsar    Alexander et Julius Cæsar  
were very great command-    sum præstans (*super.*) dux.  
ers.

The husband and the wife    Marītus et uxor consentio.  
agree.

My father and my mother    Meus pater et mater sum pius.  
are pious.

Riches, power, and honour,    Divitiæ, potestas, et honor  
are uncertain.                    sum incertus.

Habit and reason have made    Mos et ratio tu patiens et  
you more patient and gen-    placīdus facio.  
tle.

**RULE LX.** The conjunctions, *ut*, *quo*, *licet*,  
*ne*, *utīnam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part  
joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam,                    Utīnam sapēres,  
*I read that I may learn.    O that you were wise.*

*Latin Examples.*

Tanta est in Indiā ubertas soli, ut sub unā ficu turmæ  
equitum condantur.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Siti* abl. Nouns which have *in* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative.

Orandum est<sup>1</sup> ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

Hic locus est unus, quò perfugiant.

1 2 3 5 8 7 6 4  
Dicam equidem, licet arma mihi mortemque minētur.

1 3 4 2  
Utīnam illum diem videam.

Ingens fuit Romæ timor, ne itērum Galli urbem occupārent.

Omnia honesta negligunt, dummōdo potentiam consequantur.

Quamōbrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legātos mittēret, qui ab eo postulārent, ut aliquem locum medium utrisque colloquio deligēret.

### *English Examples.*

God sent his Son into the world, that the world through him might be saved.	Deus is Filium in mundus mitto, ut mundus per is servo.
---	---

I will detect the thief, though he threaten arms and death.	Detēgo furtum, licet arma et mors minor.
---	--

I wish <sup>2</sup> you were wise.	Utīnam tu sapio.
------------------------------------	------------------

Love not sleep lest thou come to poverty.	Amo non somnus, ne pauper sum.
---	--------------------------------

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

**RULE LXI.** The comparative degree governs the ablative, (*when it can be translated by than*;<sup>3</sup>) as,

Dulcior melle, <i>sweeter than honey.</i>	Præstantior auro, <i>better than gold.</i>
--	---

<sup>1</sup> *Nobis* is understood by Rule 32.

<sup>2</sup> I wish—*utinam*.

<sup>3</sup> That is, when *quàm*, *than*, is omitted after a comparative the substantive following is put in the ablative



*Latin Examples.*

Pax optabilior est bello. Cicero fuit honestior Cæsare.  
 Nihil est clementiâ divinius. Aurum gravius est argento.  
 Luna terræ propior est sole. Virtus opibus melior.  
 Adâmas durior est ferro, ferrum durius cætëris metallis.  
 Inter urbes Siciliæ nulla fuit illustrior Syracûsis.  
 Greciâ enim nulla regio magnôrum ingeniôrum<sup>1</sup> fuit fera  
 cior.

*English Examples.*

Solon was wiser than Cræsus.	Solon sapiens sum Cræsus.
Ice is colder than marble.	Glacies sum frigîdus marmor
What is more desirable than wisdom ?	Quis sum optabilis sapientia ?
Nothing is more commendable than mildness and clemency.	Nihil sum laudabilis lenitas et clementia.
Nothing is more pleasant to the mind than the light of truth.	Nihil animus jucundus sum veritas lux.
The eloquence of Xenophon was sweeter than honey.	Xenophon eloquentia dulcis sum mel.
Silver is of less value than gold; gold, than the virtues.	Argentum est minor <sup>2</sup> aurum; aurum, virtus. ( <i>abl. plur.</i> )

<sup>1</sup> Governed by *feracior* by Rule 14th, which see.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive. See Rule 48th. From that Rule are excepted these genitives, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, and *minôris*.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**RULE LXII.** A Substantive and a Participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole	oriente,	tenēbræ fugiant,
<i>the sun</i>	<i>rising,</i>	} <i>darkness flies away.</i>
or <i>while the sun riseth,</i>		
Opĕre	peracto,	ludĕmus,
<i>our work</i>	<i>being finished,</i>	} <i>let us play.</i>
or <i>when our work is finished,</i>		

*Latin Examples.*

Xenōphon philosōphus, morte filii audita, vultu nihil<sup>1</sup> immutātō dixit: "Sciēbam me mortālem<sup>2</sup> genuisse."

Etiā sanātō vulnĕre, cicātrix manet.

Me duce, tutus eris.

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio, crucifixus.

Philippo, rege Macedoniæ, mortuo, filius ejus Perseus rebellāvit, ingentibus copiis parātis.

Bellis civilibus confectis, Cæsar dictātor in perpetuum<sup>3</sup> creātus est.

Interfecto Cæsäre, anno Urbis septingentesimo nono,<sup>4</sup> bel-

<sup>1</sup> Nihil is governed by *secundum*, 'as to,' understood.

<sup>2</sup> *Illum* is understood, with which mortālem agrees.

<sup>3</sup> *Tempus* is understood: the phrase, in perpetuum, means *perpetually, forever*.

<sup>4</sup> The Romans reckoned their dates from the founding of the city, as we do ours, from the birth of Christ. Rome was founded by Romulus 753 before Christ.

la civilia reparāta sunt. Ergo turbātā republicā, Antonius, multis sceleribus cōmissis, a senātu hostis iudicātus est.

His rebus gestis, omni Galliā pacātā, tanta hujus belli ad barbāros opinio perlāta est, ut ab nationibus, quæ trans Rhenum incolērent, mitterentur legāti ad Cæsārem, quæ<sup>1</sup> se obsides datūras, imperāta factūras pollicerentur.

*English Examples.*

He came to Rome when Marius was consul: ( <i>Marius being consul.</i> )	Marius consul, Roma venit
When nature is our guide, ( <i>nature being our guide,</i> ) we can by no means err.	Natūra dux, nullus modus <sup>2</sup> erro possum.
The cause being removed, the effect is removed.	Causa amoveo, res ipse aufero.
If benevolence be taken away, ( <i>benevolence being taken away,</i> ) all pleasure is removed from life.	Benevolentia tollo, omnis oblectatio ab vita removeo
Laying aside diversion, ( <i>diversion being laid aside,</i> ) let us attend to serious things.	Amoveo ludus, serius quæro. ( <i>sub. pres.</i> )

---

<sup>1</sup> Quæ agrees with *nationes* understood.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative, by Rule 49th.

---

## APPENDIX.

---



## APPENDIX.

---

### IRREGULAR VERBS.

THE irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight ; *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *fero*, and *fio*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six ; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo*.

*SUM* has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *sum*, and *insum*, which wants the preterite ; thus, *adsum*, *adfui*, *adesse*, &c.

*Prosum*, *to do good*, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*.

*Prosum*, *prodesse*, *profui*.

#### *Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* *Pro-sum*, *prod-es*, *prod-est* ; *pro-sūmus*, *prod-estis*, &c.

*Imp.* *Prod-eram*, *prod-eras*, *prod-erat* ; *prod-erāmus*, &c.

*Per.* *Pro-fui*, *pro-fuisti*, *pro-fuit* ; *pro-fuīmus*, *pro-fuistis*, &c.

*Plu.* *Pro-fuēram*, *pro-fuēras*, *pro-fuērat* ; *pro-fuerāmus*, &c.

*Fut.* *Prod-ēro*, *prod-ēris*, *prod-ērit* ; *prod-erīmus*, &c.

#### *Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* *Pro-sim*, *pro-sis*, *pro-sit* ; *pro-sīmus*, *pro-sitis*, *pro-sint*.

*Imp.* *Prod-essem*, *prod-esses*, *prod-esset* ; *prod-essēmus*, &c.

*Per.* *Pro-fuērim*, *pro-fuēris*, *pro-fuērit* ; *pro-fuerīmus*, &c.

*Plu.* *Pro-fuissem*, *pro-fuisses*, *pro-fuisset* ; *pro-fuissēmus*, &c.

*Fut.* *Pro-fuēro*, *pro-fuēris*, *pro-fuērit* ; *pro-fuerīmus*, &c.

#### *Imperative Mode.*

*Pr.* 2. *Prod-es* or *prod-esto*,      2. *Prod-este* or *prod-estōte*,

3. *Prod-esto* ;

3. *Pro-sunto*.

*Infinitive Mode.**Pr.* Prod-esse.*Fut.* Esse pro-futūrus, -a, -um.*Per.* Pro-fuisse.

Fuisse pro-futūrus.

*Participle.**Fut.* Pro-futūrus.

Possum is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum* : and is thus conjugated :

Possum, posse, pōtui. *To be able.**Indicative Mode.**Pr.* Possum, pōtes, pōtest ; possūmus, potestis, possunt.*Imp.* Pot-ēram, -ēras, -ērat ; -erāmus, -erātis, -ērunt.*Per.* Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uīmus, -uistis, -uērunt or -uēre.*Plu.* Pot-uēram, -uēras, -uērat ; -uerāmus, -uerātis, -uērunt.*Fut.* Pot-ēro, -ēris, -ērit ; -erīmus, -erītis, -ērunt.*Subjunctive Mode.**Pr.* Pos-sim, -sis, -sit ; -sīmus, -sītis, -sint.*Imp.* Pos-sem, -ses, -set ; -sēmus, -sētis, -sent.*Per.* Pot-uērim, -uēris, -uērit ; -uerīmus, -uerītis, -uērint.*Plu.* Pot-uissem, -uisses, -uissent ; -uissēmus, -uissētis, -uissent.*Fut.* Pot-uēro, -uēris, -uērit ; -uerīmus, -uerītis, -uērint.*Infinitive Mode.**Pr.* Posse.*Per.* Potuisse.*The rest wanting*EO, ire, ivi, itum. *To go.**Indicative Mode.**Pr.* Eo, is, it ; imus, itis, eunt.*Imp.* Ibam, ibas, ibat ; ibāmus, ibātis, ibant.*Per.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit ; ivīmus, ivistis, ivērunt or ivēre.*Plu.* Ivēram, ivēras, ivērat ; iverāmus, iverātis, ivērunt.*Fut.* Ibo, ibis, ibit ; ibīmus, ibītis, ibunt.*Subjunctive Mode.**Pr.* Eam, eas, eat ; eāmus, eātis, eant.*Imp.* Irem, ires, iret ; irēmus, irētis, irent.

*Per.* Ivėrim, ivėris, ivėrit ; iverĩmus, iverĩtis, ivėrint.

*Plu.* Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset ; ivissėmus, ivissėtis, ivissent.

*Fut.* Ivėro, ivėris, ivėrit ; iverĩmus, iverĩtis, ivėrint.

### *Imperative Mode.*

### *Infinitive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	{ I, ito ;	{ ite, eunto.	<i>Pr.</i> Ire.
	{ Ito,	{ itote,	<i>Per.</i> Ivisse.
			<i>Fut.</i> Esse itũrus, -a, -um.
			Fuisse itũrus, -a, -um.

### *Participles.*

### *Gerunds.*

### *Supines.*

*Pr.* Iens, *Gen.* euntia.

Eundum.

1. Itum

*Fut.* Itũrus, -a, -um.

Eundi.

2. Ita.

Eundo, &c.

**VOLO, velle, völi. To will, or to be willing.**

### *Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Völ-o, vis, vult ; volũmus, vultis, volunt.

*Imp.* Vol-ėbam, -ėbas, -ėbat ; -ebãmus, -ebãtis, -ėbant.

*Per.* Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uĩmus, -uistis, -uėrant or -uėre.

*Plu.* Vol-uėram, -uėras, -uėrat ; -uerãmus, -uerãtis, -uėrant.

*Fut.* Vol-am, -es, -et ; -ėmus, -ėtis, -ent.

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Velim, velis, velit ; velĩmus, velitis, velint.

*Imp.* Vellem, velles, vellet ; vellėmus, vellėtis, vellent.

*Per.* Vol-uėrim, -uėris, -uėrit ; -uerĩmus, -uerĩtis, -uėrint.

*Plu.* Vol-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset ; -uissėmus, -uissėtis, -uissent.

*Fut.* Vol-uėro, -uėris, -uėrit ; -uerĩmus, -uerĩtis, -uėrint.

### *Infinitive Mode.*

### *Participle.*

*Pr.* Velle.

*Per.* Voluisse.

*Pr.* Volens.

*The rest not used.*

**NOLO, nolle, nolui. To be unwilling.**

### *Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Nölo, non-vis, non-vult ; nolũmus, non-vultis, nolunt.

*Imp.* Nol-ėbam, -ėbas, -ėbat ; -ebãmus, -ebãtis, -ėbant.



*Per.* Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uistis, -uērunt or -uēre.  
*Plu.* Nol-uēram, -uēras, -uērat ; -uerāmus, -uerātis, -uērant.  
*Fut.* Nolum, noles, nolet ; nolēmus, nolētis, nolent.

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Nolim, nolis, nolit ; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.  
*Imp.* Nollem, nolles, nollet ; nollēmus, nollētis, nollent.  
*Per.* Nol-uērim, -uēris, -uērit ; -uerīmus, -uerītis, -uērint.  
*Plu.* Nol-nissem, -nisses, -nisset ; -nissēmus, -nissētis, -nissent.  
*Fut.* Nol-uēro, -uēris, -uērit ; -uerīmus, -uerītis, -uērint.

#### *Imperative.*

#### *Infinitive.*

#### *Participle.*

2. *Sing.*      2. *Plur.*

<i>Pr.</i>	{ Noli or	{ nolite or	<i>Pr.</i> Nolle.	<i>Pr.</i> Nolens.
	{ Nolito.	{ nolitōte.	<i>Per.</i> Noluisse.	<i>The rest wanting</i>

MALO, malle, malui. *To be more willing.*

### *Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Māl-o, mavis, mavult ; malūmus, mavultis, malunt.  
*Imp.* Mal-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat ; -ebāmus, -ebātis, -ēbant.  
*Per.* Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uīstis, -uērunt or -uēre  
*Plu.* Mal-uēram, -uēras, -uērat ; -uerāmus, -uerātis, -uērant.  
*Fut.* Mal-am, -es, -et ; &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Malim, malis, malit ; malimus, malitis, malint.  
*Imp.* Mallem, malles, mallet ; mallēmus, mallētis, mallent  
*Per.* Mal-uērim, -uēris, -uērit ; -uerīmus, -uerītis, -uērint.  
*Plu.* Mal-nissem, -nisses, -nisset ; -nissēmus, -nissētis, -nissent.  
*Fut.* Mal-uēro, -uēris, -uērit ; -uerīmus, -uerītis, -uērint.

### *Infinitive Mode.*

*Pr.* Malle.      *Per.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, ferre, tūli, lātum. *To carry, to bring, or suffer.*

### ACTIVE VOICE.

### *Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Fēro, fers, fert ; ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.

- Imp.* Fer-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat ; -ebāmus, -ebātis, -ēbant.  
*Per.* Tuli, tulisti, tulit ; tulimus, tulistis, tulērunt or -ēre.  
*Plu.* Tul-ēram, -ēras, -ērāt ; -erāmus, -erātis, -ērāt.  
*Fut.* Feram, feres, feret ; ferēmus, ferētis, ferent.

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

- Pr.* Feram, feras, ferat ; ferāmus, ferātis, ferant.  
*Imp.* Ferrem, ferres, ferret ; ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent.  
*Per.* Tul-ērim, -ēris, -ērit ; -erīmus, -erītis, -ērīnt.  
*Plu.* Tul-isse, -isses, -isset ; -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.  
*Fut.* Tul-ēro, -ēris, -ērit ; -erīmus, -erītis, -ērīnt.

### *Imperative Mode.*

### *Infinitive Mode.*

- Pr.* { Fer, ferto ; { ferte, ferunto. *Pr.* Ferre.  
 { Fertō, fertōte, { fertōte, ferunto. *Per.* Tulisse.  
*Fut.* Esse latūrus, -a, -um.  
 Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um.

### *Participles.*

### *Gerunds.*

### *Supines.*

- Pr.* Fērens. *Ferendum,* 1. Lātūm.  
*Fut.* Latūrus, -a, -um. *Ferendi,* 2. Lātu.  
*Ferendo, &c.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, ferri, lātus. *To be brought.*

### *Indicative Mode.*

- Pr.* Fēror, ferris or ferre, fertur ; ferīmur, ferimīni, feruntur.  
*Imp.* Fer-ēbar, -ebāris or -ebāre, -ebātur ; -ebāmur, -ebamīni, -ebantur.  
*Per.* Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.  
*Plu.* Latus eram, &c. latus fuēram, &c.  
*Fut.* Ferar, ferēris or ferēre, ferētur ; ferēmur, feremīni, ferentur.

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

- Pr.* Ferar, ferāris or ferāre, ferātur ; ferāmur, feramīni, ferantur.  
*Imp.* Ferrer, ferrēris or ferrēre, ferrētur ; ferrēmur, ferremīni, ferrentur.  
*Per.* Latus sim, &c. latus fuērim, &c.  
*Plu.* Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.  
*Fut.* Latus fuēro, &c.

*Imperative Mode.*

*Pr.* Ferre or fertor, fertor ; ferimini, feruntor.

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Pr.* Ferri.

*Per.* Esse or fuisse latus, -a, -um.

*Participles.*

*Per.* Latus, -a, -um

*Fut.* Ferendus, -a, -um

FIO, fieri, factus. *To be made or done, to become.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Fio, fis, fit ; finus, fitis, fiunt.

*Imp.* Fiëbam, fiëbas, fiëbat ; fiëbamus, fiëbätis, fiëbant.

*Per.* Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.

*Plu.* Factus eram, &c. factus fuëram, &c.

*Fut.* Fiam, fies, fiet ; fiëmus, fiëtis, fient.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Fiam, fias, fiat ; fiämus, fiätis, fiant.

*Imp.* Fiërem, fiëres, fiëret ; fiërëmus, fiërëtis, fiërënt.

*Per.* Factus sim, &c. factus fuërim, &c.

*Plu.* Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.

*Fut.* Factus fuëro, &c.

*Imperative Mode.**Infinitive Mode.*

*Pr.* { Fi, fito ; { fite, fiunto.  
          { Fito. fito ; { fitöte, fiunto.

*Pr.* Fiëri.

*Per.* Esse or fuisse factus, -a, -um

*Fut.* Factum iri.

*Participles.**Supine.*

*Per.* Factus -a, -um.

Factu.

*Fut.* Faciendus, -a, -um.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *söleo, solère, solütus*, to use ; *audeo, audère, ausus*, to dare ; *gaudeo, gaudère, gavüsus*, to rejoice ; *fido, fidère, fisus*, to trust. So, *confido*, to trust ; and *diffido*, to distrust ; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *mareo, marère, mastus*, to be sad ; but *mastus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say

*jurātus sum*, and *cenātus sum*, for *jurāvi* and *cenāvi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification ; as, *vapūlo*, -*āvi*, -*ātum*, to be beaten or whipped ; *vēneo*, to be sold ; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *capi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses ; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs* ; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification ; thus,

*Ōdi*, I hate, or have hated, *odēram*, *odērim*, *odissem*, *odēro*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osūrus* ; *exōsus*, *perōsus*.

*Capi*, I begin, or have begun, *capēram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse*. Supine, *captu*. Participles, *captus*, *captūrus*.

*Mēmīni*, I remember, or have remembered, *meminēram*, -*ērim*, -*issem*, -*ēro*, -*isse*. Imperative, *memento*, *mementōte*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *osus sum* : and always *exōsus*, *perōsus sum*, and not *exōdi*, *perōdi*. We say, *opus capit fieri*, or *captum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

*Fūro*, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular ; thus we say, *daris*, *datur* ; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur : *Aio*, I say ; *inquam*, I say ; *fōrem*, I should be ; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare ; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it ; *ave* and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow : *cedo*, tell thou, or give me ; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr.	Aio,	ais,	ait ;	—	—	aiunt.
Imp.	Aiēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	—	aisti,	—	—	—	—
Sub. Pr.	—	aias,	aiat ;	—	aiātis,	aiant.
Imp.	Ai.			Part. Pr.	Aiens.	
Ind. Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit ;	-quīmus,	-quītis,	-quint.

<i>Imp.</i>	_____	_____	inquiēbat ;	_____	_____	_____	inquiēbant
<i>Per.</i>	_____	_____	inquiſti,	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	_____	inquiēs, inquiet ;	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Imp.</i>	Inque, inquiſto.			<i>Part. Pr.</i> Inquiens			
<i>Sub.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	} Fōrem, fores, foret ;	forēmus, forētis, forent.				
	<i>Plu.</i>						
<i>Inf.</i> Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with			{ <i>esse fu-</i> <i>tūrus.</i>				
<i>Sub. Pr.</i>	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit ;	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Per</i>	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit ;	_____	_____	_____	faxint.
<i>Fut</i>	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit ;	_____	_____	_____	faxitis, faxint.
<p>Note. <i>Faxim</i> and <i>faxo</i> are used instead of <i>fecērim</i> and <i>fecēro</i>.</p>							
<i>Imp.</i>	Ave or avēto ; <i>plur.</i> avēte or avetōte.			<i>Inf.</i> avēre.			
_____	Salve or salvēto ; — salvēte or salvetōte.			— salvēre.			
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	_____ Salvēbis.						
<i>Imp second pers. sing.</i>				Cedo, <i>plur.</i> cedite.			
<i>Ind. pres. first pers. sing.</i>				Quæso, <i>plur.</i> quæsumus.			

---

## GENERAL VOCABULARY.

---

## CONTRACTIONS IN THE VOCABULARY.

---

### NOUNS.

masc. for masculine gender.

neut. for neuter gender.

fem. for feminine gender.

com. for common gender.

The ending of the genitive case, of course, determines the declension. See page 4

### VERBS.

act. for an active verb.

dep. for a deponent verb.


pass. for a passive verb.

imper. for an impersonal verb.

neut. for a neuter verb.

irreg. for an irregular verb.

The syllable before *re*, of the infinitive mode, of course, determines the conjugation. See page 52.

 The adjectives are declined through the nominative ; and the genitive case masculine is given.

pron. for a pronoun.

conj. for a conjunction.

part. for a participle.

comp. for the comparative degree.

adv. for an adverb.

super. for the superlative degree.

prep. for a preposition.

gen. for the genitive case.

inter for an interjection.

ind. indeclinable.

## GENERAL VOCABULARY.

---

- Abdo, abdĕre, abdĭdi, abdĭtum ; act. *to conceal, to plunge.*  
Abeo, abĭre, abĭvi, abĭtum ; neut. *to depart, to go away.*  
Absolvo, absolvĕre, absolvi, absolĭtum ; act. *to acquit.*  
Absterreo, absterrĕre, absterrui, absterrĭtum ; act. *to frighten.*  
Abstinentia, abstinentiæ ; fem. *abstinence, integrity.*  
Absum, abesse, abfui ; irreg. *to be absent.* See *sum*, page 53.  
Abundĕ ; adv. *enough, sufficiently.*  
Abundo, abundāre, abundāvi, abundātum ; neut. *to abound.*  
Abūtor, abūti, abūsus sum ; dep. *to abuse.*  
Ac ; conj. *and.*  
Accĕdo, accedĕre, accessi, accessum ; act. *to approach.*  
Accĭdit ; imper. *it happened.*  
Accĭdo, accidĕre, accĭdi ; supine wanting ; neut. *to fall out, to happen*  
Accipio, accipĕre, accĕpi, acceptum ; act. *to receive.*  
Accipĭter, accipĭtris ; masc. *a hawk.*  
Accūso, accusāre, accusāvi, accusātum ; act. *to accuse.*  
Acerbus, acerba, acerbum ; gen. acerbi ; *sour, cruel, cross.*  
Achilles, Achillis ; masc. *Achilles*, a Grecian general.  
Acies, aciĕi ; fem. *an army.*  
Acta, actæ ; fem. *a shore.*  
Actium, Actii ; neut. *Actium*, a promontory of Epĭrus, in Greece.  
Acus, acūs ; fem. *a needle.*  
Acūtus, acūta, acūtum ; gen. acūti ; *sharp, quick, talented.*  
Adāmas, adamantis ; inasc. *a diamond.*  
Adeo, adĭre, adĭvi, and adii, adĭtum ; neut. *to go to, to approach*  
Adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum ; dep. *to obtain.*  
Adjūvo, adjuvāre, adjūvi, adjūtum ; act. *to help, to assist.*  
Admirabilis, admirabilis, admirabile ; adj. *admirable, wonderful.*  
Admiror, admirāri, admirātus sum ; dep. *to admire, to wonder at.*  
Admōdum ; adv. *very, very much.*



**Admoneo**, admonēre, admonui, admonitum; act. *to remind, to admonish.*

**Adno**, adnāre, adnāvi, adnātum; neut. *to swim to.*

**Adolescens**, adolescentis; com. *a young man or woman.*

**Adōro**, adorāre, adorāvi, adorātum; act. *to adore.*

**Adsum**, adesse, adfui; irreg. (see *sum*, page 53,) *to be present.*

**Advenio**, advenire, advēni, adventum; neut. *to come to.*

**Adversus**, adversa, adversum; adj. *opposite, adverse, hostile.*

**Ædifico**, ædificāre, ædificāvi, ædificātum; act. *to build.*

**Ægrōto**, ægrotāre, ægrotāvi, ægrotātum; neut. *to be sick.*

**Ægyptius**, Ægyptia, Ægyptium; adj. *Egyptian.*

**Ægyptus**, Ægypti; fem. *Ægypt*, a part of Africa.

**Ænēas**, Ænēs; dat. Ænēs; acc. Ænēam or Ænēan; voc. Ænēa; abl. Ænēà; *Æneas*, a Trojan prince.

**Æquus**, æqua, æquum; gen. æqui; *equal.*

**Æs**, æris; neut. *copper, money.*

**Æstas**, æstātis; fem. *summer.*

**Æstimo**, æstimāre, æstināvi, æstimātum; act. *to esteem, to value.*

**Ætas**, ætātis; fem. *age.*

**Æthiopia**, Æthiopiæ; fem. *Æthiopia*, a country in Africa.

**Affēro**, afferre, attūli, allātum; act. *to bring.*

**Affluo**, affluere, affluxi, affluxum; neut. *to abound.*

**Africa**, Africæ; fem. *Africa.*

**Ager**, agri; masc. *a field.*

**Agger**, aggēris; masc. *a mound, a rampart.*

**Agnosco**, agnoscere, agnōvi, agnītum; act. *to acknowledge.*

**Agnus**, agnī; masc. *a lamb.*

**Ago**, agere, egi, actum; act. *to drive, to do.* This verb must be translated according to the noun which it governs; as, agere navim, *to steer a ship*; agere vitam, *to pass a life.*

**Agricōla**, agricōlæ; masc. *a husbandman.*

**Albus**, alba, album; gen. albi; *white.*

**Alcibiādes**, Alcibiādis; masc. *Alcibiades*, an Athenian

**Alexander**, Alexandri; masc. *Alexander*, King of Macedon.

**Algor**, algōris; masc. *cold.*

**Aliēnus**, aliēna, aliēnum; gen. aliēni; *another man's, foreign, improper.*

**Aliquis**, aliqua, aliquod or aliquid; gen. alicūjus; *some, some person or thing.*

Allobroges, Allobrogum ; masc. the *Allobroges*, a people of ancient Gaul.

Alo, alere, alui, alitum and altum ; act. *to nourish*.

Alter, altera, alterum ; gen. alterius, dat. alteri ; adj. *one of two, another*.

Altus, alta, altum ; gen. alti ; *high*.

Amazon, Amazōnis ; masc. the *Amazon*, a river of South America.

Ambitus, ambitus ; masc. literally means *going around*, and was generally applied to those who went around to solicit offices ; hence it came to mean *bribery*.

Ambo, ambæ, ambo ; gen. amborum ; both : like *duo* : see page 37.

Ambulo, ambulare, ambulavi, ambulatum ; neut. *to walk*.

America, Americæ ; fem. *America*.

Amicitia, amicitiae ; fem. *friendship*.

Amicus, amici ; masc. *a friend*.

Amicus, amica, amicum ; gen. amici ; *friendly*.

Amnis, amnis ; masc. *a river*.

Amo, amare, amavi, amatum ; act. *to love*.

Amor, amoris ; masc. *love*.

Anaxagoras, Anaxagoræ ; masc. *Anaxagoras*, a Grecian philosopher

Anchises ; gen. Anchisæ ; dat. -æ, acc. -em or -en ; voc. Anchise or Anchisa ; abl. Anchise or Anchisa, (Greek noun 1st dec.) *Anchises*, a distinguished Grecian general at the Trojan war.

Anima, animæ ; fem. *the soul*.

Animal, animalis ; neut. *an animal*.

Animus, animi ; masc. *the mind, courage*.

Annuo, annuere, annui ; (no supine ; ) act. and neut. *to nod to, to favour*.

Annus, anni ; masc. *a year*.

Antecedo, antecedere, antecessi, antecessum ; act. *to go before, to precede*.

Antecello, antecellere, antecellui ; (no supine ; ) act. *to excel*.

Antepōno, antepōnere, anteposui, antepositum ; act. *to prefer*.

Antevenio, antevenire, antevēni, anteventum ; neut. *to precede, to go before*.

Antiōchus, Antiōchi ; masc. *Antiochus*, a Grecian philosopher.

Antiquus, antiqua, antiquum ; gen. antiqui ; *ancient*.

Antonius, Antonii ; masc. *Antony*, an infamous Roman senator.

Antrum, antri ; neut. *a cave, a cavern.*

Anxius, anxia, anxium ; *anxious.*

Apenninus, Apennini ; masc. *a range of the Apennine mountains*

Aperio, aperire, aperui, apertum ; act. *to open.*

Appetitus, appetitûs ; masc. *the appetite* ; in the plural number, *passions, affections.*

Aptè ; adv. *fitly, properly.*

Aptus, apta, aptum ; gen. apti ; *fit, suitable.*

Aqua, aquæ ; fem. *water.*

Arbitror, arbitrâri, arbitrâtus sum ; dep. *to think, to suppose.*

Arbor, arbôris ; fem. *a tree.*

Arca, arcæ ; fem. *a chest.*

Arcesso, arcessere, arcessivi, arcessitum ; act. *to call, to send for.*

Ardus, ardua, arduum ; gen. ardui ; *high, steep, difficult.*

Argentum, argenti ; neut. *silver.*

Arguo, arguere, argui, argutum ; act. *to accuse, to convict.*

Ariovistus, Ariovisti ; masc. *Ariovistus, a German prince.*

Aristotêles, Aristotêlis ; masc. *Aristotle, a Grecian philosopher.*

Arma, armôrum ; neut. *arms* : used only in the plural.

Arôma, aromâtis ; neut. seldom used in the singular. In the plural, *aromâta, aromâtum ; spices.*

Ars, artis ; fem. *art.*

Arundo, arundinis ; fem. *a reed.*

Arvum, arvi ; neut. *a field.*

• As, assis ; masc. *a farthing, a cent*

Asia, Asiæ ; fem. *Asia, one of the four quarters of the world.*

Asper, aspêra, aspêrum ; gen. aspêri ; *rough, adverse.*

Assêquor, assêqui, assecûtus ; dep. *to obtain, to reach.*

Assiduus, assidua, assiduum ; gen. assidui ; *constant, perpetual.*

Assyrius, Assyria, Assyrium ; adj. *Assyrian, pertaining to Assyria.*

At ; conj. *but.*

Athênæ, Athenârûm ; fem. *Athens, a city of Greece. (used only in the plural.)*

Atheniensis, Atheniensis ; masc. *an Athenian.*

Atlantîcus, Atlantîca, Atlantîcum ; (like bonus ; ) *the Atlant' ean*

Atque ; conj. *and.*

Attentio, attentîonis ; fem. *attention.*

Attentus, attentâ, attentum ; gen. attenti ; *attentive*

Attëro, atterëre, attrivi, attritum ; act. *to wear out*.

Atticus, Attici ; masc. *Atticus*, a celebrated Roman knight, who was an intimate friend of Cicero.

Auctor, auctoris ; masc. *an author, a founder*.

Auctoritas, auctoritatis ; fem. *authority*.

Audacia, audaciæ, fem. *boldness*.

Audax, audax, audax ; gen. audacis ; *bold, brave*.

Audens, audens, audens ; gen. audentis ; *bold, daring*.

Audio, audire, audivi, auditum ; act. *to hear*.

Aufëro, auferre, abstuli, ablatum ; act. *to take away*.

Aufugio, aufugëre, aufugi, aufugitum ; act. *to run away from, to escape*.

Augustus, Augusti ; masc. *August*, the name of a month.

Augustus, Augusti ; masc. *Augustus*, a Roman emperor.

Aurum, auri ; neut. *gold*.

Aut ; conj. *or*.

Auxilium, auxilii ; neut. *aid, assistance, auxiliary forces*.

Avaritia, avaritiæ ; fem. *avarice*.

Avärus, avära, avärum ; gen. aväri ; *covetous*, and when not connected with any noun, *an avaricious man*.

Avidus, avida, avidum ; gen. avidi ; *desirous, greedy of*.

Avis, avis ; fem. *a bird*.

Avus, avi ; masc. *a grandfather, an ancestor*.

Babylon, Babylöns ; fem. *Babylon*, a city of Asia.

Barbärus, barbäri ; masc. *a barbarian* : properly it is an adjective having *homo* understood.

Beätë ; adv. *happily*.

Beätus, beäta, beätum ; gen. beäti ; *happy*.

Bellum, belli ; neut. *war*.

Benë ; adv. *well*.

Benefacio, benefacëre, benefëci, benefactum ; act. *to benefit, to do good to*.

Beneficium, beneficii ; neut. *a kindness*.

Benevolentia, benevolentia ; fem. *benevolence*.

Benevölus, benevöla, benevölum ; gen. benevöli ; *benevolent, kind*.

Benignus, benigna, benignum ; gen. benigni ; *kind*.

Bestia, bestia ; fem. *brutes, beasts*.

Bibo, bibëre, bibi, bibitum ; act. *to drink*.

Biduum, bidui ; neut. *the space of two days.*

Bonitas, bonitatis ; fem. *goodness.*

Bonus, bona, bonum ; gen. boni ; *good.* (Comp. *melior* ; super. *optimus.*)

Brevi ; adv. *in a short time.*

Brevitas, brevitat̃is ; fem. *shortness, brevity.* (From brevis, *short.*)

Brevis, brevis, breve ; adj. *short.*

Brittania, Britanñe ; fem. *Britain, England.*

Brundisium, Brundusii ; neut. *Brundisium*, a town in Italy.

Brutus, Bruti ; masc. *Brutus*, the name of many illustrious Romans.

See Class. Dictionary.

Cædes, cædis ; fem. *slaughter, murder.*

Cæsar, Cæsaris ; masc. *Cæsar*, a great Roman general.

Cæter, cætëra, cætërum ; gen. cætëri ; *the other, the rest.*

Cætus, more generally written cœtus, cœtûs ; masc. *an assembly.*

Calamitōsus, calamitōsa, calamitōsum ; gen. calamitōsi ; *calamitous, miserable.*

Calcar, calcâris ; neut. *a spur.*

Calidus, calida, calidum ; gen. calidi ; *warm, hot.*

Callidus, callida, callidum ; gen. callidi ; *wise, crafty.*

Calumnia, calumniæ ; fem. *slander, calumny.*

Canis, canis ; com. *a dog.*

Cannæ, Cannârûm ; fem. plural ; *Cannæ*, a town in the south of Italy.

Capax, capax, capax ; gen. capâcis ; *capacious, large.*

Capio, capëre, cepi, captum ; act. *to take, to receive.*

Cappadocia, Cappadociæ ; fem. *Cappadocia*, a country of Asia Minor.

Captus, capta, captum ; gen. capti ; *taken, bereft, deprived of*

Capûlus, capûli ; masc. and capûlum, capûli ; neut. *a hilt or handle*

Caput, capitis ; neut. *a head.*

Carcer, carcëris ; masc. *a prison.*

Careo, carëre, carui, caritum ; neut. *to want, to be destitute of.*

Carmen, carminis ; neut. *a song, a poem, a verse.*

Carthagenienses, Carthaginiensium ; masc. *Carthaginians.*

Carthāgo, Carthagiñis ; fem. *Carthage*, a city of Africa, opposite to Rome.

Carus, cara, carum ; gen. cari ; *dear.*

Castrum, castrī ; neut. *a castle* : generally used in the plural, Castra, castrōrum, meaning *camp* or *camps*.

Casus, casūs ; masc. *a fall, a misfortune*.

Catēna, catēnæ ; fem. *a chain*.

Catilina, Catilinæ ; masc. *Catiline*, a Roman who formed a conspiracy to betray his country.

Cato, Catōnis ; masc. *Cato*, a Roman philosopher.

Catūlus, catūli ; masc. *a whelp* ; the young of all animals.

Causa, causæ ; fem. *cause*.

Caveo, cavēre, cavi, cautum ; act. *to beware, to take care of*.

Cedo, cedēre, cessi, cessum ; act. *to yield, to give place to*.

Celer, or celēris, celēris, celēre ; gen. celēris ; *swift, quick*.

Celeritas, celeritātis ; fem. *celerity*.

Celeriter ; adv. *quickly*.

Census, censūs ; masc. *a man's estate, wealth*.

Centum ; ind. *a hundred*.

Ceres, Cereris ; fem. *Ceres*, the goddess of tillage.

Certāmen, certāminis ; neut. *a contest, a battle*.

Certus, certa, certum ; gen. certi ; *certain, sure*.

Cethēgus, Cethēgi ; masc. *Cethēgus*, a Roman, concerned in Catiline's conspiracy.

Charta, chartæ ; fem. *paper*.

Cibus, cibi ; masc. *meat, food*.

Cicātrix, cicatricis ; fem. *a wound*.

Cicēro, Cicerōnis ; masc. *Cicero*, the great Roman orator.

Cilicia, Ciliciæ ; fem. *Cilicia*, a country of Asia Minor.

Cimon, Cimōnis ; masc. *Cimon*, an illustrious Athenian.

Cingo, cingēre, cinxi, cinctum ; act. *to gird, to surround*.

Circumvōho, circumvehēre, circumvexi, circumvectum ; act. *to carry about*.

Circumvenio, circumvenire, circumvēni, circumventum ; act. *to surround, to besiege*.

Citō ; adv. *quickly, shortly*.

Civilis, civilis, civile ; gen. civilis ; *civil, pertaining to the state*

Civis, civis ; com. *a citizen*.

Civitas, civitātis ; fem. *a city*.

Clam ; adv. *secretly*.

Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātum ; act. *to cry out*.

Clamor, clamōris ; masc. *a loud noise, a shout, a clamour.*

Claritudo, claritudinis ; fem. *renown, fame.*

Clarus, clara, clarum ; gen. clari ; *famous.*

Classis, classis ; fem. *a fleet.*

Clemens, clemens, clemens ; gen. clementis ; *merciful, mild.*

Clementia, clementiæ ; fem. *clemency.*

Clodius, Clodii ; masc. *Clodius*, an infamous Roman, who was killed by Milo.

Cœptum, cœpti ; neut. *a beginning, an enterprise.*

Cœtus, cœtus ; masc. *an assembly.*

Cogitatio, cogitationis ; fem. *a thought.*

Cogito, cogitare, cogitavi, cogitatum ; act. *to think.*

Cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitum ; act. *to know.*

Cohors, cohortis ; fem. *a cohort*, a band of soldiers.

Colligo, colligere, colligi, collectum ; act. *to collect.*

Collis, collis ; masc. *a hill.*

Colloquium, colloquii ; neut. *conversation, conference.*

Colo, colere, colui, cultum ; act. *to cultivate, to worship.*

Color, colōris ; masc. *a colour.*

Colossus, colossi ; masc. *a colossus*, an image or statue much larger than the life.

Columba, columbæ ; fem. *a dove.*

Comes, comitis ; com. *a companion, an attendant.*

Commemoro, commemorare, commemoravi, commemoratum ; act. *to commemorate, to mention.*

Committo, committere, commisi, commissum ; act. *to commit, to fight: committere pugnam, to join battle.*

Commōdus, commōda, commōdum ; gen. commōdi ; *convenient.*

Commūnis, commūnis, commūne ; gen. commūnis ; *common.*

Compāro, comparare, comparavi, comparatum ; act. *to compare, to provide.*

Compello, compellere, compuli, compulsum ; act. *to drive, to compel.*

Complector, complecti, complexus sum ; dep. *to embrace.*

Compōno, componere, composui, compositum ; act. *to compare, to place side by side.*

Comporto, comportare, comportavi, comportatum ; act. *to bring together.*

Compositè ; adv. *in order, orderly.*

Concedo, concedere, concessi, concessum ; neut. *to yield to, to grant.*

Concupisco, concupiscere, concupivi, concupitum ; act. *to covet, to desire.*

Condemno, condemnare, condemnavi, condemnatum ; act. *to condemn.*

Condo, condere, condidi, conditum ; act. *to hide, to build.*

Condūcit ; imper. *it is profitable.*

Condūco, conducere, conduxi, conductum ; act. *to conduct.*

Conféro, conferre, contūli, collatum ; act. *to bring, to compare ; conferre se ; to betake himself, to go.*

Conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum ; act. *to finish, to kill.*

Confido, confidere, confidi, and confisus sum ; *to confide in.*

Confirmo, confirmare, confirmavi, confirmatum ; act. *to confirm, to strengthen.*

Confiteor, confitēri, confessus sum ; dep. *to confess.*

Conjuratio, conjurationis ; fem. *a combination, a conspiracy.* (Con, same as cum, *together*, and juro, *to swear.*)

Conjūro, conjurare, conjuravi, conjuratum ; act. *to conspire together, to plot ; conjurati, conjuratorum ; conspirators.*

Conjux, conjūgis ; com. *a husband or wife.* (Con, *together*, and jungo, *to join.*)

Conscientia, conscientia ; fem. *conscience.*

Conscisco, consciscere, conscivi, conscitum ; act. *to procure, to get.*

Conscius, conscia, conscium ; gen. conscii ; *conscious.*

Consēquor, consēqui, consecutus sum ; dep. *to obtain, to attain.*

Conservo, conservare, conservavi, conservatum ; act. *to preserve.*

Consido, considerare, consēdi, consessum ; neut. *to sit down.*

Consilium, consilii ; neut. *a design, counsel.*

Consōlor, consolari, consolatus sum ; dep. *to console.*

Conspirator, conspiratoris ; masc. *a conspirator.*

Constantia, constantia ; fem. *constancy.*

Constat ; imper. *it is evident.*

Consto, constare, constiti, constatum ; neut. *to stand together.*

Consuetudo, consuetudinis ; fem. *custom.*

Consul, consulis ; masc. *a consul.*

Consulatus, consulatus ; masc. *the consulship.*

Consūlo, consūlere, consului, consultum ; act. *to consult.*



- Contemno, contemnere, contempsi, contemptum ; act. *to despise*.  
 Contendo, contendere, contendi, contentum ; act. and neut. *to stretch, to march*.  
 Contentio, contentiōnis ; fem. *contention*.  
 Contentus, contenta, contentum ; gen. contenti ; *content*.  
 Contiguus, contigua, contiguum ; gen. contigui ; *near, contiguous*.  
 Contineo, continere, continui, contentum ; act. *to contain, to keep*.  
 Contra ; adv. *on the contrary, on the other hand*.  
 Contrucido, contrucidare, contrucidavi, contrucidatum ; act. *to slay, to kill*.  
 Contrarius, contraria, contrarium ; gen. contrarii ; *contrary to*.  
 Convenienter ; adv. *consistently, agreeably to*.  
 Convenio, convenire, convēni, conventum ; neut. *to meet*.  
 Copia, copiae ; fem. *an abundance* ; plur. copiae ; *military forces*.  
 Cor, cordis ; neut. *the heart*.  
 Corpus, corpōris ; neut. *a body*.  
 Cortex, corticis ; masc. or fem. *a cork, the bark of a tree*.  
 Credo, credere, credidi, creditum ; act. *to believe*.  
 Cremo, cremare, cremavi, crematum ; act. *to burn*.  
 Creo, creare, creavi, creatum ; act. *to create*.  
 Cresco, crescere, crevi, cretum ; neut. *to grow, to increase*.  
 Crimen, criminis ; neut. *crime, a fault*.  
 Crocodilus, crocodili, masc. *a crocodile*.  
 Cræsus, Cræsi ; masc. *Cræsus*, King of Lydia, famed for his wealth.  
 Crucifigo, crucifigere, crucifixi, crucifixum ; act. *to crucify*.  
 Cruentus, cruenta, cruentum ; gen. cruenti ; *bloody, cruel*.  
 Crus, cruris ; neut. *the leg*.  
 Cubitus, cubiti ; masc. *a cubit*, a measure of 18 inches.  
 Cuique ; dative of quisque, quæque, quodque ; *to each, to every one*.  
 Culpa, culpæ ; fem. *blame, a fault*.  
 Culter, cultri ; masc. *a knife*.  
 Cùm ; conj. *when*.  
 Cunaxa, Cunaxæ ; *Cunaxa*, a city of Asia Minor.  
 Cunctus, cuncta, cunctum ; gen. cuncti ; *all, the whole, altogether*.  
 Cupiditas, cupiditatis ; fem. *a desire*.  
 Cupidus, cupida, cupidum ; gen. cupidi ; *desirous*.  
 Cupio, cupere, cupivi, cupitum ; act. *to desire*.  
 Cura, curæ ; fem. *care*.

- Curo, curāre, curāvi, curātum ; act. *to take care of, to cure, to heal.*  
 Curro, currere, cucurri, cursum ; neut. *to run.*  
 Currus, currūs, masc. *a chariot.*  
 Cursus, cursūs ; masc. *a course.*  
 Custodio, custodire, custodivi, custoditum ; act. *to guard.*  
 Cyrus, Cyri ; masc. *Cyrus, King of Persia.*  
 Damno, damnare, damnāvi, damnātum ; act. *to condemn*  
 Debeo, debere, debui, debitum ; act. *to owe, to be obliged ; and*  
*when used with the infinitive, I ought or should.*  
 Decedo, decedere, decessi, decessum ; neut. *to depart.*  
 Decem ; a numeral adj. ind. *ten.*  
 Decerno, decernere, decrēvi, decrētum ; act. *to decree, to resolve.*  
 Decimus, decima, decimum ; gen. decimi ; *the tenth.*  
 Decus, decōris ; neut. *an ornament.*  
 Dedecus, dedecōris ; neut. *disgrace.*  
 Dedo, dedere, dedidi, deditum ; act. *to submit, to give up.*  
 Defendo, defendere, defendi, defensum ; act. *to defend.*  
 Defetiscor, defetisci, defessus sum ; neut. *to be weary.*  
 Deficio, deficere, defēci, defectum ; act. *to leave, or fail one.*  
 Deinde ; adv. *afterwards.*  
 Delabor, delabi, delapsus sum ; dep. *to slip ; to fall to decay ; to*  
*flow, as a river.*  
 Delecto, delectare, delectāvi, delectātum ; act. *to delight.*  
 Deleo, delere, delēvi, delētum ; act. *to blot out, to destroy.*  
 Delibero, deliberare, deliberāvi, deliberātum ; act. *to deliberate.*  
 Deligo, deligere, delēgi, delectum ; act. *to choose*  
 Delphi, Delphōrum ; masc. *Delphi, a city of Greece, famous for its*  
*oracle of Apollo.*  
 Delphinus, delphini ; masc. *a dolphin.*  
 Dementia, dementiæ ; fem. *madness, folly.*  
 Demonstro, demonstrare, demonstrāvi, demonstrātum ; act. *to show,*  
*to demonstrate.*  
 Demosthenes, Demosthēnis ; masc. *Demosthenes, the celebrated*  
*Grecian orator.*  
 Dens, dentis, fem. *a tooth.*  
 Deploro, deplorare, deplorāvi, deplorātum ; act. *to deplore.*  
 Deposco, deposcere, depoposci ; act. *to require, to demand.*

- Deséro, deserere, deserui, desertum; act. *to abandon*.  
 Deterreo, deterrere, deterrui, deterritum; act. *to deter*.  
 Detrimentum, detrimenti; neut. *kurt, detriment*.  
 Detrudo, detrudere, detrusi, detrusum; act. *to push from*.  
 Deus, Dei; masc. *God*. Sometimes it is feminine, and signifies a *goddess*.  
 Diāna, Diānæ; fem. *Diana*, the goddess of hunting.  
 Dico, dicere, dixi, dictum; act. *to say*.  
 Dictator, dictatoris; masc. *a dictator*.  
 Dies, diēi; masc. or fem. in the sing. and masc. in the plural; *a day*.  
 Difficilis, difficilis, difficile; gen. difficilis; *difficult*.  
 Diffido, diffidere, diffisus sum; neut. pass. *to distrust*.  
 Dignus, digna, dignum; gen. digni; *worthy*.  
 Dii, plural of Deus, for Dei, Deorum; masc. *the gods*.  
 Diligentia, diligentiae; fem. *diligence*.  
 Diogenes, Diogenis; masc. *Diogenes*, a Grecian philosopher.  
 Discedo, discedere, discessi, discessum; neut. *to depart*.  
 Disciplina, disciplinæ; fem. *discipline, instruction, education*.  
 Discipulus, discipuli; masc. *a scholar, a disciple, a learner*.  
 Disco, discere, didici; (no supine;) act. *to learn*.  
 Discordia, discordiae; fem. *discord*.  
 Disertus, diserta, disertum; gen. disert; *eloquent*.  
 Displiceo, displicere, displicui, displicitum; neut. *to displease*.  
 Disputo, disputare, disputavi, disputatum; act. *to dispute, to argue*.  
 Distinctè; adv. *distinctly, methodically*.  
 Disto, distare; neut. *to be distant*.  
 Diu; adv. *long*; comp. diutius; *longer*; super. diutissimè; *longest*.  
 Diutine; adv. *a long time*.  
 Dives, dives, dives; gen. divitis; *rich*.  
 Divinus, divina, divinum; gen. divini; *divine, noble*.  
 Divitiæ, divitiarum; fem. plur. *riches*.  
 Do, dare, dedi, datum; act. *to give*.  
 Doceo, docere, docui, doctum; act. *to teach*.  
 Doctrina, doctrinæ; fem. *knowledge, learning*.  
 Doctus, docta, doctum; gen. docti; part. or adj. *learned*.  
 Dolor, doloris; masc. *pain, grief*.  
 Dominus, domini; masc. *a master*.  
 Domo, domare, domui, domitum; act. *to subdue*.

- Domus, domûs, or domi; fem. *a house*.  
 Dono, donâre, donâvi, donâtum; act. *to give*.  
 Dormio, dormîre, dormîvi, dormîtum; neut. *to sleep*.  
 Ducenti, ducentæ, ducenta; gen. ducentûrum; *two hundred*.  
 Duco, ducêre, duxi, ductum; act. *to lead, to induce, to draw*.  
 Dulcis, dulcis, dulce; gen. dulcis; *sweet*.  
 Dum; adv. *whilst*.  
 Dummôdo; conj. *if, provided that*.  
 Duo, duce, duo; gen. duorum; *two*.  
 Duplex, duplex, duplex; gen. duplîcis; *double, two-fold*.  
 Durus, dura, durum; gen. duri; *hard*.  
 Dux, ducis; masc. *a general, a leader*.  
 Edax, edax, edax; gen. edâcis; *eating, consuming*.  
 Edîtus, edîta, edîtum; gen. edîti; pæ.t. and adj. *descended from*.  
 Edo, edêre, edîdi, edîtum; act. *to utter, to publish*.  
 Efficio, effîcêre, effîci, effectum; act. *to effect, to make*.  
 Effugio, effugêre, effûgi, effugîtum; act. *to escape*.  
 Egeo, egêre, egui; (no supine;) neut. *to need*.  
 Ego; pron. *I*. See page 41.  
 Egredior, egrêdi, egressus sum; dep. *to go out*.  
 Egyptus; see *Ægyptus*.  
 Elephas, elephantis; masc. *an elephant*; and also, elephantus,—i.  
 Elis, Elîdis; fem. *Elis*, a country of Peloponnesus.  
 Eloquentia, eloquentiæ; fem. *eloquence*.  
 Emo, emêre, emi, emptum; act. *to buy*.  
 Emolumentum, emolumenti; neut. *advantage, profit*.  
 Enim; conj. *for, indeed, truly*.  
 Ensis, ensis; masc. *a sword*.  
 Eô; adv. *to that pass, to that degree, to that pitch*.  
 Eo, ire, ivi, itum; neut. *to go*.  
 Epaminondas, Epaminondæ; masc. 1st dec. *Epaminondas*, a celebrated Theban general.  
 Ephesus, Ephësi; fem. *Ephesus*, a city of Asia Minor.  
 Epicûrus, Epicûri; masc. *Epicurus*, a Grecian philosopher.  
 Epistôla, epistôlæ; fem. *a letter, an epistle*.  
 Equanimitas, equanimitâtis; fem. *equanimity*.  
 Eques, equîtis; masc. *a horseman, a knight*.  
 Equestris, equestris, equestre; gen. equestris; *equestrian*.

Equidem; conj. *truly, verily*.

Equito, equitare, equitavi, equitatum; act. *to ride upon a horse*.

Equus, equi; masc. *a horse*.

Erado, eradere, erasi, erasum; act. *to efface*.

Ergo; conj. *therefore*.

Eripio, eripere, eripui, ereptum; act. *to seize*.

Erratum, errati; neut. *an error, vice*.

Erro, errare, erravi, erratum; neut. *to err*.

Error, erroris; masc. *an error*.

Erudio, erudire, erudivi and erudii, eruditum; act. *to teach*.

Esca, escæ; fem. *meat, food*.

Esuries, esuriëi; fem. *a desire to eat, hunger*.

Et; conj. *and*. When there are two *ets* following each other in the same sentence, the former *et* should be rendered *both*, and the latter *and*.

Eternus, eterna, eternum; gen. eterni; *eternal*.

Etiā; conj. *also*.

Etsi; conj. *though, although*.

Euphrates, Euphratis; masc. *the Euphrates, a river of Mesopotamia*.

Eurōpa, Eurōpæ; fem. *Europe*, one of the four quarters of the world.

Eurōtas, Eurōtæ, Eurōtæ, Eurōtam or Eurōtan, Eurōta, Eurōtā; 1st dec. masc. *the Eurotas, a river of Laconia, in Greece*.

Evado, evadere, evasi, evasum; neut. and act. *to get out of, to evade*.

Evenio, evenire, evēni, eventum; neut. *to come out, to happen*.

Eventus, eventūs; masc. *an event, an issue*.

Excito, excitare, excitavi, excitatum; act. *to move, to excite*.

Exedo, exedere, exēdi, exēsūm; act. *to eat, to consume*.

Exemplum, exempli; neut. *an example*.

Exeo, exire, exivi, exītūm; neut. *to go out*.

Exercitus, exercītūs; masc. *an army*.

Eximius, eximīa, eximium; gen. eximii; *choice, wonderful, remarkable*.

Existimo, existimare, existimavi, existimatum; act. *to think*.

Exitium, exitiū; neut. *destruction*.

Expatior, expatiari, expatiatus sum; dep. *to walk abroad*.

Expectatio, expectatiōis; fem. *expectation*.

- Expēdit; imper. *it is profitable*.  
 Expeditio, expeditiōnis; fem. *an expedition*.  
 Expello, expellere, expūli, expulsum; act. *to expel*.  
 Experior, experiri, expertus sum; dep. *to try*.  
 Experts, experts, experts; gen. expertis; *free from, void of*.  
 Expertus, experta, expertum; gen. experti; *skilful, experienced in*.  
 Explorātor, exploratōris; masc. *a scout, a spy*.  
 Extinguo, extinguere, extinxi, extinctum; act. *to extinguish, to kill*.  
 Exubero, exuberare, exuberavi, exuberatum; neut. *to abound*.  
 Exul, exulis; com. *an exile, a banished man or woman*.  
 Exuviae, exuviarum; fem. *spoils*.  
 Fabius, Fabii; masc. *Fabius, a Roman general*.  
 Fabula, fabulae; fem. *a fable*.  
 Facies, faciei; fem. *a face*.  
 Facile; adv. *easily*; comp. facilius; super. facillime.  
 Facinus, facinoris; neut. *an action, a deed*.  
 Facio, facere, feci, factum; act. *to do, to make*. This verb, like *ago* and *habeo*, is construed variously, according to its noun, as, *facere verba, to speak, to hold a discourse*.  
 Facultas, facultatis; fem. *aptness, means, wealth*.  
 Faex, faecis; fem. *the dregs, or lees of wine, sediment*.  
 Fama, famae; fem. *fame, report*.  
 Fames, famis; fem. *hunger*.  
 Famulor, famulāri, famulatus sum; dep. *to wait upon, to serve*.  
 Fatum, fati; neut. *fate*.  
 Faveo, favere, favi, fautum; neut. *to favour*.  
 Felix, felix, felix; (see p. 34;) *happy*.  
 Fera, feræ; fem. *a wild beast*.  
 Ferax, ferax, ferax; gen. feracis; *fertile*.  
 Ferè; adv. *almost*.  
 Ferinus, ferina, ferinum; (like bonus;) *of a wild beast, or wild beast's*—as, *pellis ferina, a wild beast's skin*.  
 Ferro, ferre, tuli, latum; irreg. *to bear, to carry*; also, *to say*; as, *ferunt, they carry it about, that is, they say*.  
 Ferrum, ferri; neut. *iron, a sword*.  
 Fertilis, fertilis, fertile; (like mitis;) *fertile*.  
 Ficus, ficus; fem. *a fig*.  
 Fides, fidei; fem. *faith, credit*.

- Fidēlis, fidēlis, fidēle ; gen. fidēlis ; *faithful, trusty*.  
 Fido, fidēre, fidi, and fīsus sum ; *to trust*.  
 Filia, filiæ ; fem. *a daughter*.  
 Filius, filii ; masc. *a son*.  
 Finio, finire, finivi, finitum ; act. *to finish*.  
 Finis, finis ; masc. *an end, a border, a limit*.  
 Flamma, flammæ ; fem. *a flame*.  
 Fleo, flere, flevi, fletum ; act. *to weep*.  
 Florens, florens, florens ; gen. florentis ; *flourishing*.  
 Floreo, florēre, florui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to flourish*.  
 Flumen, fluminis ; neut. *a river*.  
 Fluo, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum ; neut. *to flow*.  
 Fluvius, fluvii ; masc. *a river*.  
 Fœdus, fœda, fœdum ; gen. fœdi ; *filthy, base, vile*.  
 Fœdus, fœdēris ; neut. *a league, a treaty*.  
 Fœmīna, fœmīnæ ; fem. *a woman*.  
 Fons, fontis ; fem. *a fountain*.  
 Foris ; adv. *abroad, without*.  
 Formōsus, formōsa, formōsum ; gen. formōsi ; *beautiful*.  
 Fortis, fortis, forte ; gen. fortis ; *brave*.  
 Fortiter, fortius, fortissimē ; adv. *bravely, more bravely, most bravely*.  
 Fortitudo, fortitudinis ; fem. *fortitude, bravery*.  
 Fortūna, fortūnæ ; fem. *fortune*.  
 Fossa, fossæ ; fem. *a ditch*.  
 Frænum, fræni ; neut. *a bit, a bridle*.  
 Frango, frangēre, fregi, fractum ; act. *to break*.  
 Frater, fratris ; masc. *a brother*.  
 Fraus, fraudis ; fem. *fraud*.  
 Frequento, frequentāre, frequentāvi, frequentātum ; act. *to frequent, to people a place*.  
 Fretum, freti ; *a strait, a frith*.  
 Fretus, freta, fretum ; gen. freti ; *trusting to, relying on*.  
 Frigidus, frigida, frigidum ; (like bonus ;) *frigid, cold*.  
 Frons, frondis ; fem. *a leaf of a tree*.  
 Frugalitas, frugalitatis ; fem. *frugality*.  
 Fruges, frugum ; fem. plur. *fruit, corn*.  
 Frumentum, frumenti ; neut. *corn*.

**Fruor, frui, fructus, or frūctus sum ; dep. to enjoy.**

**Fugio, fugēre, fugi, fugitum ; act. to fly from, to escape.**

**Fugo, fugāre, fugavi, fugatum ; act. to put to flight.**

**Fulgeo, fulgēre, fulsi ; (no supine ;) neut. to shine.**

**Fulvia, Fulviæ ; fem. *Fulvia*, a woman of Rome, who made known to Cicero the designs which Catiline and the other conspirators had against his life.**

**Fundamentum, fundamenti ; neut. a foundation.**

**Fundo, fundāre, fundāvi, fundatum ; act. to found, to establish.**

**Fundo, fundēre, fudi, fusum ; act. to pour out, to vanquish.**

**Fungor, fungi, functus sum ; dep. to discharge an office or duty.**

**Funis, funis ; masc. a rope.**

**Fur, furis ; com. a thief.**

**Furor, furoris ; masc. madness, fury.**

**Furtum, furti ; neut. theft.**

**Futurus, futūra, futurum ; gen. futuri ; (part. of esse ;) about to be, the future.**

**Gaditānus, Gaditāna, Gaditānum ; gen. Gaditani ; of, or belonging to ancient Gades ; the *freta Gaditāna*, are what are now called the *Straits of Gibraltar*.**

**Galea, galeæ ; fem. a helmet.**

**Galli, Gallorum ; masc. the Gauls.**

**Gallia, Galliæ ; fem. ancient Gaul, now France.**

**Gallus, Galli ; masc. a Gaul.**

**Gaudeo, gaudēre, gavisus sum ; neut. to rejoice.**

**Gemma, gemmæ ; fem. a gem, a rich treasure.**

**Gener, genēri ; masc. a son-in-law.**

**Gens, gentis ; fem. a nation.**

**Geographia, geographiæ ; fem. geography.**

**Germāni, Germanorum ; masc. the Germans.**

**Gero, gerēre, gessi, gestum ; act. to carry on.**

**Gestio, gestire, gestivi, gestitum ; neut. to rejoice.**

**Gigno, gignēre, genui, genitum ; act. to beget, to produce.**

**Glacies, glaciēi ; fem. ice.**

**Gloria, gloriæ ; fem. glory.**

**Glorior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum ; dep. to boast.**

**Græcus, græca, græcum ; (like bonus ;) *Græcian*.**

**Grammatica, grammaticæ ; fem. grammar.**



Gratia, gratiæ ; fem. *favour, sake, cause.*

Gratus, grata, gratum ; gen. grati ; *grateful, acceptable.*

Gravis, gravis, grave ; gen. gravis ; *heavy.*

Grecia, Greciæ ; fem. *Greece.*

Grotius, Grotii ; masc. *Grotius*, a distinguished German author, who flourished about two hundred years ago.

Gubernaculum, gubernaculi ; neut. *the helm of a ship.*

Habeo, habere, habui, habitum ; act. *to have, to esteem, to reckon.*

But the translation must depend upon the noun which it governs, as, habere orationem, *to deliver an oration.*

Hæreo, hære, hæsi, hæsum ; neut. *to stick.*

Hannibal, Hannibalis ; masc. *Hannibal*, a Carthaginian general.

Hector, Hectōris ; masc. *Hector*, a Trojan general.

Hei ! inter. *ah !*

Helēna, Helēnæ ; fem. *Helen*, a Grecian woman of great beauty, whom Paris carried to Troy ; and thence arose the Trojan war.

Helōtes, Helōtum ; masc. *the Helots*, a people whom the Spartans held in slavery.

Herē ; adv. *yesterday* ; sometimes spelled *heri*.

Heu ! inter. *alas !*

Hic ; adv. *here, in this place.*

Hic, hæc, hoc ; *this.* See page 44.

Hiems, hiēmis ; fem. *winter.*

Hispania, Hispaniæ ; fem. *Spain*, a country in the south of Europe.

Homērus, Homēri ; masc. *Homer*, the father of Greek epic poetry.

Homicidium, homicidii ; neut. *murder.*

Homo, hominis ; com. *a man or woman.* Homīnes, plur. *mankind.*

Honestas, honestātis ; fem. *honesty.*

Honestus, honesta, honestum ; gen. honesti ; *noble, honest.*

Honor, honōris ; masc. *honour.*

Honōro, honorāre, honorāvi, honorātum ; act. *to honour.*

Hora, horæ ; fem. *an hour.*

Horatius, Horatii ; masc. *Horace*, the great lyric poet of the Romans.

Hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum ; dep. *to exhort, to advise.*

Hortus, horti ; masc. *a garden.*

Hostis, hostis ; masc. *an enemy.*

Hūc ; adv. *hither, here.*

Ibi ; adv. *there, in that place.*

Iconium, Iconii ; neut. *Iconium*, a town in Asia Minor.

Ictus, ictûs ; masc. *a blow*.

Idem, eâdem, idem ; gen. ejusdem ; *the same*.

Igitur ; conj. *therefore*.

Ignârus, ignâra, ignârûm ; gen. ignâri ; *ignorant*.

Ignis, ignis ; masc. *fire*.

Ignôtus, ignôta, ignôtum ; (like bonus ;) *unknown*.

Ille, illa, illud ; gen. illius ; *he, she, it*. See page 48.

Illecēbra, illecēbræ ; fem. *an enticement*.

Illustris, illustris, illustre ; gen. illustris ; *illustrious*.

Illyrius, Illyrii ; masc. *an Illyrian*.

Imâgo, imagînis ; fem. *an image*.

Imîtor, imitâri, imitâtus sum ; dep. *to imitate*.

Immēmor, immēmor, immēmor ; gen. immemōris ; *unmindful*.

Immineo, imminēre, imminui ; neut. *to threaten*.

Immortâlis, immortalis, immortâle ; gen. immortalis ; *immortal*.

Immutâtus, immutâta, immutâtum ; gen. immutâti ; adj. *unchanged*.

Impendeo, impendēre, impendi, impensum ; neut. *to hang over, to threaten*.

Imperâtor, imperatōris ; masc. *a commander*.

Imperiōsus, imperiōsa, imperiōsum ; gen. imperiōsi ; *imperious, that can rule or govern*.

Imperium, imperii ; neut. *command, government*.

Impĕro, imperâre, imperâvi, imperâtum ; act. *to command, to reign*.

Impertio, impertire, impertivi, impertitum ; act. *to impart*.

Impĕtus, impĕtûs ; masc. *an attack*.

Impiētās, impietâtis ; fem. *impiety*.

Impleo, implĕre, implĕvi, implĕtum ; act. *to fill*.

Incĕdo, incedĕre, incesi, incessum ; neut. *to walk*.

Inceptum, incepti ; neut. *a beginning, an undertaking*.

Incertus, incerta, incertum ; gen. incerti ; *uncertain*.

Inclŷtus, inclŷta, inclŷtum ; *renowned, famous*.

Incolō, incolĕre, incolui, incultum ; act. *to inhabit*.

Incommōdum, incommōdi ; neut. *a loss, an inconvenience*.

Incredibĭlis, incredibĭlis, incredibĭle ; (like mitis ;) *incredible, not to be believed*.

Indĕ ; adv. *thence, from that place*.

India, Indiæ ; fem. *India*, the south eastern part of Asia.

- Indigeo, indigēre, indigui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to want*.  
 Indignus, indigna, indignum ; adj. *unworthy, undeserving*.  
 Indōles, indōlis ; fem. *a disposition*.  
 Induo, induēre, indui, indūtum ; act. *to cover, to clothe*.  
 Industria, industriæ ; fem. *industry*.  
 Inertia, inertiae ; fem. *sluggishness*.  
 Infinitus, infinita, infinitum ; gen. infiniti ; *infinite*.  
 Inflammo, inflammāre, inflammāvi, inflammātum ; act. *to inflame*.  
 Ingenium, ingenii ; neut. *the mind, the talents, the disposition*.  
 Ingens, ingens, ingens ; gen. ingentis ; *great*.  
 Ingredior, ingrēdi, ingressus sum ; dep. *to enter*.  
 Inimicus, inimica, inimicum ; gen. inimici ; *hostile, inimical*.  
 Initium, initii ; neut. *a beginning*.  
 Injuria, injuriæ ; fem. *an injury*.  
 Inopia, inopiæ ; fem. *want*.  
 Inops, inops, inops ; gen. inōpis ; *poor, destitute of*.  
 Insidiæ, insidiarum ; fem. plur. *snares, an ambush*.  
 Inspiciens, insipientis ; adj. *foolish*.  
 Insula, insulæ ; fem. *an island*.  
 Insum, inesse, infui ; neut. *to be in*.  
 Intentus, intenta, intentum ; gen. intenti ; *intent upon*.  
 Interdico, interdicere, interdixi, interdictum ; act. *to interdict, to prohibit, to forbid*.  
 Interea ; adv. *in the mean time*.  
 Interficio, interficere, interfeci, interfectum ; act. *to slay*.  
 Interpres, interpretis ; com. *an interpreter*.  
 Interpretor, interpretari, interpretatus sum ; dep. *to explain*.  
 Intersum, interesse, interfui ; neut. *to be present*.  
 Intervenio, intervenire, intervēni, interventum ; act. *to intervene, to put an end to*.  
 Invenio, invenire, invēni, inventum ; act. *to invent, to find*.  
 Invideo, invidere, invidi, invisum ; neut. *to envy*.  
 Invidia, invidiæ ; fem. *envy*.  
 Invisus, invisā, invisum ; gen. invisī ; *odious, hated*.  
 Ipse, ipsa, ipsum ; gen. ipsius ; pron. *he, she, it*.  
 Ira, iræ ; fem. *anger*.  
 Irātus, irāta, irātum ; (like bonus ;) *angry*.  
 Irretio, irretire, irretivi, irretitum ; act. *to entangle*.

- Irrideo, irridere, irrisi, irrisum ; act. *to laugh at, to deride.*  
 Is, ea, id ; *he, she, it.* See page 44.  
 Isoerates, Isocratis ; masc. *Isocrates*, a Grecian philosopher.  
 Iste, ista, istud ; gen. istius ; pron. *this, that.*  
 Ita ; adv. *so, in that manner.*  
 Italia, Italise ; fem. *Italy*, a country in the south of Europe.  
 Iter, itinensis ; neut. *a journey.*  
 Iterum ; adv. *again.*  
 Jam ; adv. *now.*  
 Joannes, Joannis ; masc. *John.*  
 Juba, jubae ; fem. *a mane* ; juba leonis ; *a lion's mane.*  
 Jubeo, jubere, jussi, jussum ; act. *to command.*  
 Judex, judicis ; com. *a judge.*  
 Judicium, judicii ; neut. *judgment, a trial.*  
 Judico, judicare, judicavi, judicatum ; act. *to judge.*  
 Jugurtha, Jugurthae ; masc. *Jugurtha*, a king of Numidia.  
 Julius Cæsar, Julii Cæsaris ; masc. *Julius Cæsar*, a Roman general.  
 Jugo, jungere, junxi, junctum ; act. *to join.*  
 Junius, Junii ; masc. *June.*  
 Juno, Junonis ; fem. *Juno*, the queen of the goddesses.  
 Jupiter ; gen. Jovis ; dat. Jovi ; acc. Jovem ; voc. Jupiter ; abl. Jove ;  
 masc. *Jupiter*, the greatest of the heathen deities ; sometimes means  
*the air*, as he was the god of the heavens.  
 Juro, jurare, juravi, juratum ; act. *to swear.*  
 Jus, juris ; neut. *right, law, justice.*  
 Justitia, justitiæ ; fem. *justice.*  
 Justus, justa, justum ; gen. justi ; *just.*  
 Juvensis, juvenis ; com. *a youth.*  
 Juvo, juvare, juvi, jutum ; act. *to help, to do good.*  
 Labium, labii ; neut. *a lip.*  
 Labor, labi, lapsus sum ; dep. *to fall.*  
 Labor, laboris ; masc. *labour.*  
 Lac, lactis ; neut. *milk.*  
 Lacedæmon, Lacedæmonis ; fem. *Lacedæmon*, a city of Greece.  
 Lacertus, lacerti ; masc. *an arm.*  
 Lacryma, lacrymæ ; fem. *a tear.*  
 Lætus, læta, lætum ; adj. *joyful, glad.*  
 Lana, lanæ ; fem. *wool.*

- Lanātus, lanāta, lanātum ; gen. lanāti ; *woolly, bearing wool.*  
 Largior, largiri, largitus sum ; dep. *to give liberally, to lavish.*  
 Largiter ; adv. *largely, much.*  
 Lateo, latēre, latui ; neut. *to be concealed.*  
 Latro, latrōnis ; masc. *a robber.*  
 Latus, latēris ; neut. *the side.*  
 Laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum ; act. *to praise*  
 Laus, laudis ; fem. *praise.*  
 Lavinium, Lavinii ; neut. *Lavinium, a town in Italy.*  
 Lectio, lectionis ; fem. *a lesson.*  
 Legātus, legāti ; masc. *an ambassador.*  
 Legio, legionis ; fem. *a legion, a band of soldiers.*  
 Lego, legēre, legi, lectum ; act. *to read.*  
 Lenis, lenis, leue ; gen. lenis ; *kind, soft, gentle.*  
 Leo, leōnis ; masc. *a lion*  
 Lepīdus, lepīda, lepīdum ; gen. lepīdi ; *witty, smart.*  
 Lepus, lepōris ; masc. *a hare.*  
 Lesbos, Lesbi ; fem. *Lesbos, an island in the Ægean sea*  
 Lethālis, lethālis, lethāle ; gen. lethālis ; *deadly.*  
 Lex, legis ; fem. *a law.*  
 Liber, libri ; masc. *a book.*  
 Liberalitas, liberalitātis ; fem. *liberality, generosity*  
 Libēri, liberōrum ; masc. plur. *children.*  
 Libēro, liberāre, liberāvi, liberātum ; act. *to liberate, to set free.*  
 Libido, or lubīdo, libidinis ; fem. *desire, pleasure, criminal ap-  
petite.*  
 Licet ; imper. present tense ; *it is lawful.*  
 Licet ; conj. *although.*  
 Limen, liminis ; neut. *a threshold of a door.*  
 Lingua, linguæ ; fem. *a language.*  
 Linquo, linquēre, liqui, lictum ; act. *to leave.*  
 Lis, litis ; fem. *a strife, a dispute.*  
 Litēra, litēre ; fem. *a letter ; in the plural, writings, learning,  
literature.*  
 Litus, litōris ; neut. *the sea shore.*  
 Loco, locāre, locāvi, locātum ; act. *to place, to let or lease.*  
 Locuples, locuples, locuples ; gen. locuplētis ; *rich.*  
 Locus, loci : masc. *a place ; plural, loci and loca, locōrum ; neut*

- Longitudo, longitudinis ; fem. *length*.  
 Longus, longa, longum ; gen. longi ; *long*.  
 Loquor, loqui, locutus or loquutus sum ; dep. *to speak*.  
 Libet ; imper. *it pleaseth*, same as libet.  
 Lubricus, lubrica, lubricum ; adj. *smooth, slippery*.  
 Luceo, lucere, luxi ; (no supine ; ) neut. *to shine*.  
 Ludo, ludere, lusi, lusum ; neut. *to play*.  
 Luna, lunæ ; fem. *the moon*.  
 Lupus, lupi ; masc. *a wolf*.  
 Lusitania, Lusitanis ; fem. *Portugal*, or rather a part of that country  
 now called Portugal.  
 Lux, lucis ; fem. *light*.  
 Luxuria, luxuriæ ; fem. *luxury*.  
 Macædo, Macedonis ; masc. *a Macedonian*.  
 Macedonia, Macedonis ; fem. *Macedonia*.  
 Magister, magistri ; masc. *a master*.  
 Magistratus, magistratus ; masc. *magistracy, a magistrate*.  
 Magnitudo, magnitudinis ; fem. *size, magnitude*.  
 Magnus, magna, magnum ; (like bonus ; ) *great*. See page 40.  
 Majestas, majestatis ; fem. *majesty* ; also, *crimes against the state, treason*.  
 Majores, majorum ; plural, masc. *ancestors*.  
 Malè ; adv. *badly, wickedly*.  
 Maledico, maledicere, maledixi, maledictum ; act. *to revile*.  
 Malefacio, malefacere, malefeci, malefactum ; act. *to do an ill, to revile, to abuse*.  
 Malum, mali ; neut. *evil*.  
 Malus, mala, malum ; (like bonus ; ) *bad*. See page 40.  
 Mandatum, mandati ; neut. *a command*.  
 Manè ; adv. *early in the morning*.  
 Maneo, manere, mansi, mansum ; neut. and act. *to remain, to wait for*.  
 Manus, manûs ; fem. *the hand*.  
 Marcus Antonius, Marci Antonii ; masc. *Mark Antony, a Roman*.  
 Margarita, margaritæ ; fem. *a pearl*.  
 Mare, maris ; neut. *the sea*.  
 Marinus, marina, marinum ; gen. marini ; *marine, relating to the sea*.

**Mater, matris ; fem. a mother.**

**Mausölus, Mausöli ; masc. Mausolus, a king of Caria, whose monument, called the Mausolöum, was reckoned among the seven wonders of the world.**

**Maximus, maxīma, maxīmum ; gen. maxīmi ; the greatest. See p. 40.**

**Me ; me ; acc. and abl. of ego ; I. See page 41.**

**Mecænas, Mecænātis ; masc. Mecænas, a Roman knight.**

**Medius, media, medium ; gen. medii ; the middle, common.**

**Meipsum ; me myself ; compounded of me, me ; and ipsum, myself ; from ipse : declined like ego, and ipse, separately.**

**Mel, mellis ; neut. honey.**

**Membrāna, membrānæ ; fem. a membrane.**

**Memīni ; defective verb, perfect tense, with the signification of a present tense ; I remember ; inf. meminisse ; imper. memento, mementöte.**

**Memor, memor, memor ; gen. memöris ; mindful.**

**Memöro, memöräre, memörävi, memörätum ; act. to make mention of, to mention.**

**Meneläus, Meneläi ; masc. Menelaus, a king of Sparta.**

**Mens, mentis ; fem. the mind.**

**Mensis, mensis ; masc. a month.**

**Mercēs, mercēdis ; fem. a reward.**

**Meridies, meridiēi ; masc. mid-day.**

**Merum, meri ; neut. wine.**

**Merx, mercis ; fem. merchandise.**

**Messis, messis ; fem. a harvest.**

**Metallum, metalli ; neut. a metal.**

**Metellus, Metelli ; masc. Metellus, a Roman consul.**

**Metus, metūs ; masc. fear.**

**Meus, mea, meum ; gen. mei ; adj. pron. my, mine.**

**Miles, militis ; masc. a soldier.**

**Mille and millia ; adj. plural, ind. in the singular ; in the plural, millia, millium, millibus ; a thousand.**

**Milo, Milönis ; masc. Milo, a Roman who killed Clodius, and who was defended by Cicero.**

**Miltiades, Miltiädis ; masc. Miltiades, an Athenian general.**

**Mina, minæ ; fem. a pound.**

**Minæ, minarum ; fem. plur. threats.**

**Minimè** ; adv. *least of all, not at all* ; super. of *parvè* or *param*, which see.

**Minimas, minîma, minîmum** ; (super. of *parvus* ;) *the least*. See page 40.

**Minor, minâri, minâtus sum** ; dep. *to threaten*.

**Minor, minor, minus** ; gen. *minôris* ; (comp. of *parvus* ;) *less*. See page 40.

**Mirabilis, mirabilis, mirabile** ; gen. *mirabilis* ; *wonderful*.

**Miracûlum, miracûli** ; neut. *a wonder, a miracle*.

**Mirus, mira, mirum** ; gen. *miri* ; *wonderful*.

**Miser, misêra, misêrum** ; gen. *misêri* ; *miserable*.

**Miserandus, miseranda, miserandum** ; gen. *miserandi* ; *to be pitied, lamentable*.

**Misereor, miserêri, misertus and miserîtus sum** ; dep. *to pity*.

**Misereco, miseresce're** ; neut. *to pity* ; no perfect nor supine.

**Mitis, mitis, mite** ; gen. *mitis* ; *meek, mild, merciful*.

**Mitto, mittêre, misi, missum** ; act. *to send*.

**Modêrer, moderâri, moderâtus sum** ; dep. *to govern, to moderate*.

**Modestia, modestiæ** ; fem. *moderation, sobriety, modesty*.

**Modestus, modesta, modestum** ; gen. *modesti* ; *moderate, modest*.

**Mœnia, mœnium** ; neut. *walls* ; used only in the plural.

**Molestia, molestiæ** ; fem. *trouble, vexatiousness*.

**Molestus, molesta, molestum** ; gen. *molesti* ; *troublesome*.

**Molo, Molônîs** ; masc. *Molo*, a Rhodian orator.

**Moneo, monêre, monui, monîtum** ; act. *to admonish*.

**Monîtor, monitôris** ; masc. *an adviser*.

**Mons, montis** ; masc. *a mountain*.

**Morbus, morbi** ; masc. *a disease*.

**Morior, mori and morîri, mortuus sum** ; dep. *to die*.

**Moror, morâri, morâtus sum** ; dep. *to delay*.

**Morôsus, morôsa, morôsum** ; gen. *morôsi* ; *peevish, cross*.

**Mors, mortis** ; fem. *death*.

**Mortâlis, mortâlis, mortâle** ; gen. *mortâlis* ; *mortal* ; when not joined with a noun it means *a mortal* ; that is, *a man*.

**Moveo, movêre, movi, motum** ; act. *to move*.

**Mox** ; adv. *presently*.

**Muliêbris, muliêbris, muliêbris** ; gen. *muliêbris* ; *effeminate*.

**Mulier, muliêris** ; fem. *a woman*.



- Multitudo**, multitudinis ; fem. *a multitude*.  
**Multum** ; adv. *much* ; also multò, *by much*.  
**Multus**, multa, multum ; gen. multi ; *much, many*. See page 40.  
**Mundus**, mundi ; masc. *the world*.  
**Munio**, munire, munii and munivi, munitum ; act. *to fortify*.  
**Munitus**, munita, munitum ; gen. muniti ; part. *fortified*.  
**Munus**, munëris ; neut. *a gift*.  
**Murus**, muri ; masc. *a wall*.  
**Musa**, musæ ; fem. *a muse*.  
**Muto**, mutare, mutavi, mutatum ; act. *to change*.  
**Nam** ; conj. *for*.  
**Narratio**, narrationis ; fem. *a narration*.  
**Narro**, narrare, narravi, narratum ; act. *to relate*.  
**Nascor**, nasci, natus sum ; dep. *to be born*.  
**Natio**, nationis ; fem. *a nation*.  
**Natura**, naturæ ; fem. *nature, disposition*.  
**Natus**, nati ; masc. *a son*.  
**Natus**, nata, natum ; gen. nati ; perf. participle from nascor ; *descended, born*.  
**Nauta**, nautæ ; masc. *a sailor, a mariner*.  
**Navâlis**, navâlis, navâle ; gen. navâlis ; *naval*.  
**Navis**, navis ; fem. *a ship*.  
**Neapôlis**, Neapôlis ; fem. *Naples, a city of Italy*.  
**Ne** ; adv. *not*.  
**Nec** ; conj. *neither, nor*.  
**Neco**, necare, necavi, necatum ; act. *to kill*.  
**Negligens**, negligens, negligens ; gen. negligentis ; *careless, negligent*.  
**Negligo**, negligere, neglexi, neglectum ; act. *to neglect*.  
**Negotium**, negotiû ; neut. *a thing, an affair, business*.  
**Nemo**, neminis ; com. *no one*.  
**Neptânus**, Neptûni ; masc. *Neptune, the god of the sea*.  
**Neque** ; conj. *neither*.  
**Nescius**, nescia, nescium ; adj. *not knowing, ignorant*.  
**Niger**, nigra, nigrum ; gen. nigri ; *black*.  
**Nihil** ; noun, ind. *nothing* ; sometimes contracted into *nil*.  
**Nihilum**, nihili ; neut. *nothing*.  
**Nimis** ; adv. *too much*.

Ninus, Nini; masc. *Ninus*, the first king of the Assyrians.

Nisi; conj. *unless*.

No, nāre, nāvi, nātum; neut. *to swim*.

Nobilis, nobilior, nobilissimus; *noble, nobler, noblest*.

Nocens, nocens, nocens; gen. nocentis; adj. *hurtful*.

Noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocitum; act. *to hurt*.

Nomen, nominis; neut. *a name*.

Non; adv. *not*.

Nonus, nona, nonum; gen. noni; *the ninth*.

Nos, nostrum or nostri; *we, of us, &c.* See page 41.

Nosco, noscēre, novi, notum; act. *to know*.

Noster, nostra, nostrum; gen. nostri; *our*.

Novitas, novitātis; fem. *novelty, newness*.

Novus, nova, novum; gen. novi; *new*.

Nox, noctis; fem. *night*.

Nubes, nubis; fem. *a cloud*.

Nudo, nudāre, nudāvi, nudātum; act. *to deprive*.

Nullus, nulla, nullum; gen. nullius; *no one*. See page 33.

Numantia, Numantiæ; fem. *Numantia*, a city in Spain.

Numantini, Numantinorum; masc. *the Numantines*, a people of ancient Spain.

Numen, numinis; neut. *a god, power, authority, divine influence*.

Nummus, nummi; masc. *a piece of money*.

Nunc; adv. *now*.

Nuncio, nunciāre, nunciāvi, nunciātum; act. *to announce, to tell*, also written nuntio.

Nunquam; adv. *never*.

Nuntius, nuntii; masc. *a messenger*.

O! inter. *oh!*

Obedio, obedire, obediui, obeditum; neut. *to obey*.

Obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum; dep. *to forget*.

Observatio, observatiōis; fem. *notice, observation, regard*.

Obes, obsidis; masc. and fem. *a hostage*.

Obsum, obesse, obfui; neut. *to be hurtful, to hurt, to injure*.

Obtineo, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentum; act. *to obtain*.

Obviā; adv. *in the way, to meet*.

Occido, occidēre, occīdi, occisum; act. *to kill*.

Occido, occidēre, occīdi, occāsum; neut. *to fall down, to set*

Occulto, occultāre, occultāvi, occultātum ; act. *to hide, to keep secret, or conceal.*

Occultus, occulta, occultum ; gen. occulti ; *hidden, secret.*

Occumbo, occumbēre, occubui, occubītum ; neut. *to fall down, to yield.*

Occūpo, occupāre, occupāvi, occupātum ; act. *to seize, to occupy.*

Octāvus, octāva, octāvum ; gen. octāvi ; *the eighth.*

Octo ; adj. ind. *eight.*

Octoginta ; ind. adj. *eighty.*

Oculus, oclī ; masc. *an eye.*

Odi ; a defective verb, *I hate, or have hated.* It is used only in this tense, the perfect, and those derived from it.

Odōror, odorāri, odorātus sum ; dep. *to smell.*

Officio, officēre, offēci, effectum ; act. *to hinder, to be hurtful to.*

Officium, officii ; neut. *a duty, office.*

Olympius, Olympia, Olympium ; (like bonus ;) *Olympian, an epithet of Jupiter.*

Omnis, omnis, omne ; gen. omnis ; *all, every.*

Onēro, onerāre, onerāvi, onerātum ; act. *to load.*

Onus, onēris ; neut. *a weight, a burden.*

Onustus, onusta, onustum ; gen. onusti ; *laden or loaded with.*

Opēra, opērae ; fem. *toil, labour.*

Opēror, operāri, operātus sum ; dep. *to labour.*

Optimus, opīma, opīmum ; gen. opīmi ; *rich, fat.*

Opinio, opiniōnis ; fem. *expectation, opinion.*

Opis ; gen. opem ; acc. ope ; abl. (these three cases only are used in the singular,) fem. *power, assistance* ; plur. opes, opum, opibus ; *wealth, strength.*

Opportūnus, opportūna, opportūnum ; gen. opportūni ; *convenient, favourable.*

Opprīmo, opprimēre, oppressi, oppressum ; act. *to oppress.*

Oppugno, oppugnāre, oppugnāvi, oppugnātum ; act. *to assault, to fight against.*

Optabilis, optabilis, optabile ; gen. optabilis ; *desirable.*

Optimē ; adv. *best* ; compared thus ; benē, milius, optimē.

Optimius ; super. *best.* See page 40.

Opus ; subst. indecl. *need, occasion.*

Opus, opēris ; neut. *a work.*

- Ora, oræ ; fem. *a coast, a shore*.  
 Oraculum, oraculi ; neut. *an oracle*.  
 Oratio, orationis ; fem. *an oration*.  
 Orator, oratoris ; masc. *an orator*.  
 Orbo, orbare, orbavi, orbatum ; act. *to deprive*.  
 Oriens, orientis ; masc. *the east, or rising of the sun*.  
 Orior, oriri, ortus sum ; dep. *to rise*.  
 Ornatè ; adv. *elegantly*.  
 Ornatus, ornatus ; masc. *dress, an ornament*.  
 Oro, orare, oravi, oratum ; act. *to speak, to ask, to pray*.  
 Ortus, ortus ; masc. *birth, descent*.  
 Ortus, orta, ortum ; participial adj. *risen, proceeding from*.  
 Ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostensum and ostentum ; act. *to shew, to exhibit*.  
 Ostento, ostentare, ostentavi, ostentatum ; act. *to show, to display, to boast*.  
 Otium, otii ; neut. *leisure, rest*.  
 Paco, pacare, pacavi, pacatum ; act. *to appease, to subdue*.  
 Pado, Padi ; masc. *the river Po*.  
 Palleo, pallere, pallui ; (no supine ; ) neut. *to be pale*.  
 Panis, panis ; masc. *bread*.  
 Pango, pangere, panxi, pegi and pepigi, pactum ; act. *to strike*.  
 Par, par, par ; gen. paris ; *equal* ; pares, used as a noun, *equals*.  
 Parco, parcere, peperci, parsum and paratum ; neut. *to spare*.  
 Parens, parentis ; com. *a parent*.  
 Pareo, parere, parui, paritum ; neut. *to obey*.  
 Pario, parere, pepერი, partum ; act. *to produce, to bring forth*.  
 Paris, Paridis ; masc. *Paris, a celebrated Trojan*.  
 Pariter ; adv. *equally, in a like degree*.  
 Paro, parare, paravi, paratum ; act. *to prepare, to procure, to acquire*.  
 Partio, partire, partivi, partitum ; act. *to divide*.  
 Parvè or parum ; adv. *a little, too little* ; comp. minus ; *less* ; super. minimè ; *least*.  
 Parvus, parva, parvum ; gen. parvi ; *small, little*. See page 40.  
 Passus, passus ; masc. *a pace*.  
 Pateo, patere, patui ; neut. *to be open, to be manifest*.  
 Pater, patris ; masc. *a father*.

- Patēra, patēræ ; fem. *a goblet*.  
 Patiens, patiens, patiens ; gen. patientis ; *patient, able to endure*.  
 Patientia, patientiæ ; fem. *patience*.  
 Patria, patriæ ; fem. *a country*.  
 Patrimonium, patrimonii ; neut. *an inheritance*.  
 Patrōnus, patrōni ; masc. *a patron, a defender*.  
 Pauci, paucæ, pauca ; gen. paucōrum ; used only in the plural, *few*.  
 Paululus, paulūla, paululum ; gen. paulūli ; *a little*.  
 Pauper, pauper, pauper ; gen. paupēris ; *poor, destitute* ; when used without a nom. *poor persons, the poor*.  
 Paupertas, paupertātis ; fem. *poverty*.  
 Pavo, pavōnis ; masc. *a peacock*.  
 Pax, pacis ; fem. *peace*.  
 Pecco, peccāre, peccāvi, peccātum ; neut. *to sin, to offend, to transgress*.  
 Pecunia, pecuniæ ; fem. *money*.  
 Pecus, pecōris ; neut. *a flock of sheep, cattle*.  
 Pellis, pellis ; fem. *a skin*.  
 Pendo, pendēre, pependi, pensum ; act. *to weigh, to value*.  
 Perāgo, peragēre, perēgi, peractum ; act. *to perfect, to finish*.  
 Perāgro, peragrāre, peragrāvi, peragratum ; act. *to travel over*.  
 Percutio, percutēre, percussi, percussum ; act. *to strike*.  
 Perdo, perdēre, perdidi, perditum ; *to lose, to consume, to destroy* part. pass. perditus ; *lost, wretched, miserable*.  
 Peregrinor, peregrināri, peregrinātus sum ; dep. *to travel over*.  
 Pereo, perire, perii, peritum ; neut. *to perish, to die*.  
 Perfectio, perfectiōnis ; fem. *perfection*.  
 Perfēro, perferre, pertūli, perlātum ; *to carry, to bear, to convey*.  
 Perfīdus, perfīda, perfīdum ; *false, perfidious*.  
 Perfugio, perfugēre, perfūgi, perfugitum ; neut. *to fly for shelter*.  
 Pergo, pergēre, perrexi, perrectum ; neut. *to go, to proceed*.  
 Pericūlum, pericūli ; neut. *danger*.  
 Peritus, perita, peritum ; gen. periti ; *skilled, expert*.  
 Perluceo, perlucēre, perluxi ; (no supine ; ) neut. *to shine through, to be very bright*.  
 Perniciōsus, perniciōsa, perniciōsum ; gen. perniciōsi ; *injurious, hurtful*.  
 Perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum ; gen. perpetui ; *perpetual*.

*Persæ, Persarum; the Persians.*

*Perseus, Persei; masc. Perseus, a son of Philip, king of Macedon.*

*Persevero, perseverare, perseveravi, perseveratum; act. to persevere.*

*Persicus, Persica, Persicum; adj. Persian.*

*Persuadeo, persuadere, persuasi, persuasum; act. to persuade.*

*Perturbo, perturbare, perturbavi, perturbatum; act. to disturb.*

*Pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventum; neut. to come to.*

*Pes, pedis; fem. a foot.*

*Pestis, pestis; fem. a pest, pestilence, destruction.*

*Peto, petere, petivi and petii, petitum; act. to desire, to seek, to go to.*

*Petrus, Petri; masc. Peter.*

*Pharsalia, Pharsaliæ; fem. Pharsalia, a province of Thessaly, famous for a battle between Cæsar and Pompey; the town is Pharsalus.*

*Pharsalicus, Pharsalica, Pharsalicum; of Pharsalia, Pharsalian; Pharsalia was a part of Thessaly in Greece.*

*Pharus, Phari; fem. Pharos, an island in the Mediterranean sea.*

*Philippus, Philippi; masc. Philip, king of Macedon.*

*Philosophia, philosophiæ; fem. philosophy.*

*Philosophus, philosophi; masc. a philosopher.*

*Phæbus, Phæbi; masc. Apollo.*

*Phœnices, Phœnicum; masc. plur. the Phœnicians.*

*Phryges, Phrygum; masc. the Phrygians, a people of Asia Minor.*

*Piëtas, pietätis; fem. piety.*

*Pingo, pingere, pinxi, pictum; act. to paint.*

*Piræus, Piræi; masc. Piræus, the port of Athens.*

*Piscor, piscari, piscatus sum; dep. to fish.*

*Pius, pia, pium; gen. pii; pious.*

*Placeo, placere, placui, placitum; neut. to please.*

*Plato, Platônis; masc. Plato, an Athenian philosopher.*

*Plenus, plena, plenum; gen. pleni; full.*

*Plurimus; super. of multum; most: plurimi; very many. See page 40.*

*Plus, pluris; comp. of multum; more. See page 40.*

*Pœna, pœnæ; fem. punishment.*

*Polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum; dep. to promise.*

*Pomarium, pomarii; neut. an orchard*

*Pompeius, Pompeii; masc. Pompey, a great Roman general.*

*Pomum, pomi; neut. an apple.*

Pono, ponere, posui, positum ; act. *to place, to pitch.* (P. castra, *to pitch the camps.*)

Populus, populi ; masc. *the people.*

Porrigo, porrigere, porrexī, porrectum ; act. *to reach, to extend*

Portus, portus ; masc. *a harbor, port, or haven.*

Posco, poscere, poposci ; (no supine ; ) *to ask, to demand.*

Posidonius, Posidonii ; masc. *Posidonius*, a Rhodian philosopher.

Possessio, possessionis ; fem. *possession.*

Possum, posse, potui ; neut. *to be able.*

Posteritas, posteritatis ; fem. *posterity.*

Posterus, postera, posterum ; adj. *coming after, following, next* (Comp. posterior, super. postrēmus.) Posteri, posterorum ; *posterity, descendants.*

Postquam ; adv. *after that.*

Postridie ; adv. *on the next day.*

Postulo, postulare, postulavi, postulatum ; act. *to demand.*

Potentia, potentiae ; fem. *power.*

Potestas, potestatis ; fem. *power.*

Potio, potiois ; fem. *drink, a draught.*

Potior, potiri, potitus sum ; dep. *to possess, to enjoy.*

Præceptum, præcepti ; neut. *a precept, a command.*

Præcipue ; adv. *especially.*

Præclarus, præclara, præclarum ; gen. præclari ; *distinguished, excellent, famous.*

Præda, prædæ ; fem. *prey, booty.*

Præditus, prædita, præditum ; gen. præditi ; *endued with*

Prædor, prædari, prædatus sum ; dep. *to plunder.*

Prælium, prælii ; neut. *a battle.*

Præluceo, præluere, præluxi ; (no supine ; ) neut. *to surpass.*

Præmium, præmii ; neut. *a reward.*

Præsidium, præsidii ; neut. *a guard, a defence.*

Præsideo, præsidere, præsedī, præsessum ; neut. *to preside over.*

Præstans, præstans, præstans ; gen. præstantis ; *excellent.*

Præstat, præstabat ; impers. *it is better.*

Præsum, præesse, præfui ; neut. *to be before, or over, to command*

Præteritus, præterita, præteritum ; adj. *passed, gone by.*

Prætor, prætoris ; masc. *a prætor ; a magistrate of Rome, next in honor to the consul.*

Pravus, prava, pravum; gen. pravi; *wicked, depraved.*

Precis; dat. preci; acc. precem; abl. prece; fem. *a prayer*: it has but these four cases in the singular: in the plural—preces, precum, precibus; *prayers, supplications.*

Pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum; (like bonus;) *precious, valuable.*

Pretium; neut. *price.*

Pridiē; adv. *the day before.*

Primus, prima, primum; super. *first*; comp. prior; *the former*: no positive.

Princeps, princīpis; com. properly an adj. meaning, *first, chief*; but often used as a noun, meaning, *a prince, an emperor, a general.*

Principium, principii; neut. *a beginning.*

Priusquā; adv. *before that.*

Privo, privāre, privāvi, privātum; act. *to deprive.*

Probitas, probitātis; fem. *goodness, probity.*

Probo, probāre, probāvi, probātum; act. *to prove, to try.*

Proboscis, proboscidis; fem. *a proboscis, an elephant's trunk.*

Probus, proba, probum; gen. probi; *good, virtuous.*

Procēdo, procedēre, processi, processum; neut. *to proceed.*

Procul; adv. *far, far off.*

Prodigiū, prodigii; neut. *a prodigy.*

Proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum; dep. *to go, to advance.*

Proh! inter. *oh!*

Promitto, promittēre, promisi, promissum; act. *to promise.*

Promptus, prompta, promptum; gen. prompti; *ready.*

Propē; adv. *near.*

Propōno, proponēre, proposui, propositum; act. *to proclaim, to propose.*

Propior, propior, propius; gen. propiōris; comp. *nearer*; super. *proximus; nearest.* This adjective has no positive. The comparative and superlative are derived from the adverb, propē, *near.*

Proprius, propria, proprium; gen. proprii; *proper, peculiar, one's* (own).

Prospicio, prospicēre, prospexi, prospectum; act. *to view, to provide for.*

Prosum, prodesse, profui, (compounded of *pro* and *sum* and varied like *sum*;) *to do good, to be serviceable to.*

Providus, provida, providum; gen. providi; *foreseeing, wise.*



- Provincia, provinciæ ; fem. *a province*.  
 Proximè ; adv. *next, very near* ; comparative, *propius*.  
 Prudens, prudens, prudens ; gen. prudentis ; *prudent*.  
 Prudentia, prudentiæ ; fem. *prudence*.  
 Ptolemæus, Ptolemæi ; masc. *Ptolemy*, one of the kings of Egypt  
 Pudor, pudoris ; masc. *modesty*.  
 Puella, puellæ ; fem. *a girl*.  
 Puer, pueri ; masc. *a boy*.  
 Puerilis, puerilis, puerile ; gen. puerilis ; *childish, puerile*.  
 Pugio, pugionis ; masc. *a dagger*.  
 Pugna, pugnæ ; fem. *a battle*.  
 Pugno, pugnare, pugnâvi, pugnâtum ; neut. *to fight, to resist*.  
 Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum ; gen. pulchri ; *beautiful, good, excellent*  
 Punio, punire, punivi, punitum ; act. *to punish*.  
 Puto, putâre, putâvi, putâtum ; act. *to think, to consider*.  
 Pyramis, pyramidis ; fem. *a pyramid*.  
 Pyrenæi, Pyrenæorum ; masc. plur. *the Pyrenees mountains*, dividing France from Spain.  
 Quæro, quærere, quæsi, quæsîtum ; act. *to ask, to seek*.  
 Qualis, qualis, quale ; gen. qualis ; *of what kind, what sort*.  
 Quàm ; conj. *than*.  
 Quamôbrem ; adv. *wherefore*.  
 Quamvis ; conj. *although, though*.  
 Quanquam ; conj. *although*.  
 Quantum ; adv. *as much as, how much ! how !*  
 Quantus, quanta, quantum ; gen. quanti ; *how great, how much*.  
 Quartus, quarta, quartum ; gen. quarti ; *the fourth*.  
 Quatuor ; indecl. *four*.  
 Que ; conj. *and* : always joined to the end of a word.  
 Queror, queri, questus sum ; dep. *to complain*.  
 Qui, quæ, quod ; *who, which, that*. See page 46.  
 Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quiddam ; gen. cujusdam ; *a certain thing or person*.  
 Quidem ; adv. *truly, indeed*.  
 Quies, quiêtis ; fem. *rest, quiet*.  
 Quinque ; adj. *five*.  
 Quis, quæ, quod ; *who, which, what ?*

Quisque, quæque, quodque *or* quidque ; gen. *cujusque* ; pronoun ; *every one*.

Quò ; adv. *whither*.

Quondam ; adv. *in time past, formerly*.

Quousque ; adv. *how long*.

Quum ; adv. *when*.

Rapio, rapère, rapui, raptum ; act. *to pull, to carry off*.

Ratio, ratiōis ; fem. *reason*.

Rebello, rebellāre, rebellāvi, rebellātum ; neut. *to rebel*.

Recipio, recipère, recēpi, receptum ; act. *to receive*.

Recordor, recordāri, recordātus sum ; dep. *to remember*.

Rectè · adv. *rightly, correctly*.

Rectus, recta, rectum ; gen. *recti* ; *right, correct, virtuous*.

Reddo, reddère, reddīdi, redditum ; act. *to restore, to return*.

Redeo, redīre, redīvi, *and* redii, redītum ; neut. *to return*.

Refèro, referre, retūli, relātum ; act. *to carry back, to relate*.

Refūto, refutāre, refutāvi, refutātum ; act. *to disprove, to restrain*.

Regina, reginæ ; fem. *a queen*.

Regio, regiōis ; fem. *a region, a tract of country*.

Regno, regnāre, regnāvi, regnātum ; neut. *to reign*.

Regnum, regni ; neut. *a kingdom*.

Rego, regère, rexi, rectum ; act. *to rule*.

Religio, religiōis ; fem. *religion*.

Relinquo, relinquère, reliqui, relictum ; act. *to leave, to forsake*.

Remeo, remeāre, remeāvi, remeātum ; neut. *to return*.

Reminiscor, reminisci , (no part.) dep. *to remember*.

Remunéro, remunerāre, remunerāvi, remunerātum ; act. *to reward, to recompense*.

Remus, remi ; masc. *an oar*.

Repāro, reparāre, reparāvi, reparātum ; act. *to renew, to repair*.

Reperio, reperire, repēri, repertum ; act. *to find*.

Repēto, repetère, repetivi *or* repetii, repetitum ; act. *to ask or demand back or again*.

Repleo, replère, replēvi, replētum act. *to fill*.

Res, rei ; fem. *an affair, a thing*, and sometimes, *property, wealth*.

Responsum, responsi ; neut. *an answer*.

Respublica, reipublicæ ; fem. *a republic*.

Rex, regis ; masc. *a king*.

Rhenus, Rheni ; masc. *the river Rhine*

Rhetor, rhetōris ; masc. *a rhetorician*, one who teaches rhetoric

Rhodānus, Rhodāni ; masc. *the Rhone*, a river of France.

Rhodus, Rhodi ; fem. *Rhodes*, an island in the Mediterranean.

Rideo, ridēre, risi, risum ; neut. *to laugh*.

Ridicūlus, ridicūla, ridicūlum ; gen. ridicūli ; *ridiculous, worthy to be laughed at*.

Rivus, rivi ; masc. *a brook, a river*.

Rogo, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātum ; act. *to ask*.

Roma, Romæ ; fem. *Rome*, a city of Italy, and once the mistress of the world.

Romāni, Romanōrum ; plur. masc. *the Romans*.

Romānus, Romāna, Romānum ; (like bonus ;) *a Roman*.

Romūlus, Romūli ; masc. *Romulus*, the founder of Rome.

Rosa, rosæ ; fem. *a rose*.

Rotundus, rotunda, rotundum ; gen. rotundi ; *round*.

Ruo, ruere, rui, ruītum ; neut. *to rush*.

Rus, ruris ; neut. *the country* : in the plural, *rura, farms, fields*

Sæpè ; adv. *often*.

Salus, salūtis ; fem. *health*.

Salvus, salva, salvum ; gen. salvi ; *safe*.

Sanguinolentus, sanguinolenta, sanguinolentum ; gen. sanguinolenti, *bloody*.

Sanguis, sanguinis ; fem. *blood*.

Sano, sanāre, sanāvi, sanātum ; act. *to heal or cure*.

Sanus, sana, sanum ; gen. sani ; *sound, whole*.

Sapiens, sapiens, sapiens ; gen. sapientis ; *wise*.

Sapientia, sapientiæ ; fem. *wisdom*.

Sapio, sapere, sapivi or sapui ; neut. and act. *to know, to be wise*.

Sappho, Sapphūs and Sapphōnis ; fem. *Sappho*, a celebrated Greek poetess.

Sardinia, Sardiniæ ; fem. *Sardinia*, an island in the Mediterranean

Sardis, Sardis ; fem. *Sardis*, a city of Lydia in Asia Minor.

Satāgo, satagere, satēgi ; (no supine ;) neut. *to be busy, to have enough to do*.

Satis ; adv. *enough, sufficient*.

Satisfacio, satisfacere, satisfēci, satisfactum ; act. *to satisfy, to perform*.

- Saturnus, Saturni; masc. *Saturn*, one of the heathen deities.  
 Satus, sata, satum; gen. sati; part. *descended from*.  
 Satus, satūs; masc. *a sowing, planting*.  
 Scelerātus, scelerāta, scelerātum; gen. scelerāti; *wicked*.  
 Scelestus, scelesta, scelestum; gen. scelesti; *wicked*.  
 Scelus, scelēris; neut. *a crime, wickedness*.  
 Schola, scholæ; fem. *a school*.  
 Scientia, scientiæ; fem. *knowledge*.  
 Scio, scire, scivi, scitum; act. *to know*.  
 Scipio, Scipiōnis; *Scipio*, a Roman general.  
 Scitor, scitāri, scitātus sum; dep. *to ask, to inquire*.  
 Scopūlus, scopūli; masc. *a rock*.  
 Scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum; act. *to write*.  
 Scytha, Scythæ; masc. *the Scythians*, a people in the north of Asia.  
 Secundum; prep. *after, as to, according to*.  
 Secus; prep. *by*.  
 Sed; conj. *but*.  
 Sedes, sedis; fem. *a seat, a dwelling, a habitation*.  
 Sejungo, sejungēre, sejunxi, sejunctum; act. *to separate*.  
 Seligo, seligēre, selēgi, selectum; act. *to select, to choose*.  
 Semen, seminis; neut. *seed*.  
 Semper; adv. *always*.  
 Senātus, senātūs; masc. *the senate*.  
 Senātūsconsultum, senātūsconsulti; neut. *a decree of the senate*.  
 Senectus, senectūtis; fem. *old age*.  
 Senex, senīcis and senis; *old*; comp. senior; *older*: no super.  
 Sensus, sensūs; masc. *sense*, the faculty of perceiving external objects.  
 Sententia, sententiæ; fem. *an opinion, a sentence*.  
 Septem; adj. ind. *seven*.  
 Septingentesīmus, septingentesīma, septingentesīmum; *the seven hundredth*.  
 Septuaginta; adj. ind. *seventy*.  
 Sepulchrum, sepulchri; neut. *a sepulchre*.  
 Sequor, sequi, secūtus sum; dep. *to follow*.  
 Serius, seria, serium; gen. serii; *serious, grave, important*.  
 Sermo, sermōnis; fem. *a speech, conversation*.  
 Sero, serēre, sevi, satum; act. *to sow*.  
 Serus, sera, serum; gen. seri; *late*.

Servio, servīre, servīvi, servitum ; neut. *to serve, to obey.*

Servitium, servitii ; neut. *servitude, slavery.*

Servus, servi ; masc. *a servant.*

Sex ; ind. *six.*

Si ; conj. *if.*

Sicilia, Siciliæ ; fem. *Sicily, an island in the Mediterranean.*

Silentium, silentii ; neut. *silence.*

Simia, simiæ ; fem. *an ape.*

Similis, similis, simile ; gen. *similis ; like, similar.*

Simul ; adv. *together, in company with, at the same time.*

Sinceritas, sinceritatis ; fem. *sincerity, candour.*

Sincerus, sincera, sincerum ; adj. *pure, unmixed, sincere.*

Sisto, sistere, steti, statum ; neut. *to stop, to stand still.*

Sitis, sitis ; fem. *thirst.*

Sobrinus, sobrini ; masc. *a cousin.*

Societas, societatis ; fem. *society, an alliance.*

Socrates, Socratis ; masc. *Socrates, a celebrated Grecian philosopher.*

Sodalis, sodalis ; com. *a companion.*

Sol, solis ; masc. *the sun.*

Solamen, solaminis ; neut. *comfort.*

Solatium, solatii ; neut. *solace, comfort.*

Soleo, solere, solitus sum ; neut. pass. *to be accustomed.*

Solitudo, solitudinis ; fem. *solitude.*

Solon, Solonis ; masc. *Solon, one of the seven wise men of Greece.*

Solum, soli ; neut. *the soil.*

Solum ; adv. *only, alone.*

Solus, sola, solum ; gen. *solus ; alone, only.*

Solve, solvere, solvi, solutum ; act. *to loose, to free, to pay.*

Somnus, somni ; masc. *sleep.*

Sors, sortis ; fem. *lot.*

Sparta, Spartæ ; *Sparta, one of the most powerful of the Grecian states.*

Spartani, Spartanorum ; masc. plur. *the Spartans, a people of Greece.*

Specto, spectare, spectavi, spectatum ; act. *to behold, to see, to perceive.*

Specus, specus ; masc. *a cave.*

Spes, spei ; fem. *hope.*

Spiritus, spiritus ; masc. *the wind, breath.*

**Spiro**, spirāre, spirāvi, spirātum ; act. *to blow, to breathe.*

**Splendo**, splendēre, splendui ; neut. (no supine,) *to shine.*

**Splendor**, splendōris ; masc. *splendour, brightness.*

**Spolio**, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum ; act. *to spoil, to plunder, to deprive.*

**Spolium**, spoliī ; neut. *spoil*, taken from an enemy, *plunder.*

**Statua**, statuæ ; fem. *a statue.*

**Statuo**, statuēre, statui, statūtum ; act. *to resolve.*

**Stella**, stellæ ; fem. *a star.*

**Stirps**, stirpis ; com. *the root of a tree, the race or lineage of a family.*

**Sto**, stāre, steti, statum ; neut. *to stand.*

**Studeo**, studēre, studui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to study, to favour.*

**Studiōsus**, studiōsa, studiōsum ; gen. studiōsi ; *studious, desirous*

**Studium**, studii ; neut. *study, concern, employment.*

**Stultus**, stulta, stultum ; gen. stulti ; *foolish.*

**Suadeo**, suadēre, suasi, suasum ; act. *to persuade.*

**Suavis**, suavis, suave ; (like mitis ;) *sweet, pleasant.*

**Subdūco**, subducēre, subdixi, subductum ; act. *to take away, to withdraw.*

**Subitō** ; adv. *suddenly.*

**Subītus**, subita, subitum ; gen. subīti ; *sudden.*

**Succenseo**, succensēre, succensui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to be angry*

**Succurro**, succurrēre, succurri, succursum ; act. *to help.*

**Sui** ; *of himself, of herself, of itself.* See page 42.

**Sulla**, Scīllæ ; *Sylla*, a Roman general.

**Sum**, esse, fui ; neut. *to be.*

**Summus**, summa, summum ; gen. summi ; super. *highest* : positive, *supērus* ; *high* : comp. superior ; *higher.*

**Superior**, superior, superius ; gen. superiōris ; comp. *higher.*

**Supersedeo**, supersedēre, supersēdi, supersessum ; neut. *to forbear*

**Supersum**, superesse, superfui ; neut. *to abound, to remain.*

**Supērus**, supēra, supērum ; gen. supēri ; *high.*

**Supervenio**, supervenire, supervēni, superventum ; neut. *to come upon*

**Surdus**, surda, surdum ; gen. surdi ; *deaf.*

**Surgo**, surgēre, surrexi, surrectum ; neut. *to arise.*

**Suus**, sua, suum ; gen. sui ; pro. *his, hers, its.*

**Syracusæ**, Syracusārum ; fem. plur. *Syracuse*, the capital of Sicily

- Syria, Syriæ ; fem. *Syria*, a country of Asia.
- Taceo, tacere, tacui, tacitum ; neut. *to keep silence*.
- Tacitus, tacita, tacitum ; gen. taciti ; part. and adj. *silent*.
- Talentum, talenti ; neut. *a talent*; a coin worth one thousand dollars.
- Talis, talis, tale ; adj. *such, such like*.
- Tám ; conj. *as, such*.
- Tandem ; adv. *at length, at last*.
- Tango, tangere, tetigi, tactum ; act. *to touch*.
- Tantò ; adv. *so much, by so much* ; properly the ablative of tantus.
- Tantus, tanta, tantum ; gen. tanti ; *so great, so much*.
- Taurus, tauri ; masc. *a bull*.
- Tego, tegere, texi, tectum ; act. *to cover*.
- Tegumentum, tegumenti ; neut. *a covering*.
- Temeritas, temeritatis ; fem. *rashness*.
- Templum, templi ; neut. *a temple*.
- Tempus, temporis ; neut. *time*.
- Tendo, tendere, tetendi and tendi, tensum and tentum ; act. *to extend, to stretch, to direct one's course, to march, to go*.
- Tenēbræ, tenebrarum ; fem. plur. *darkness*.
- Teneo, tenere, tenui, tentum ; act. *to hold fast*.
- Tenuis, tenuis, tenue ; gen. tenuis ; *slender, thin*.
- Tergum, tergi ; neut. *the back*.
- Terra, terræ ; fem. *the earth*.
- Terribilis, terribilis, terribile ; gen. terribilis ; *terrible*.
- Terror, terrōis ; masc. *fear, terror*.
- Testimonium, testimonii ; neut. *a testimony, a witness*.
- Testūdo, testudinis ; fem. *a tortoise*. This name was also applied to a warlike wooden machine, covered with hides, which resembled the back of a *tortoise*, and under the cover of which the enemy approached the walls of a city in order to beat them down.
- Thebæ, Thebārum ; *Thebes*, a city of Greece.
- Thesaurus, thesauri ; masc. *a treasure*.
- Thessalia, Thessaliæ ; fem. *Thessaly*, a country of Greece.
- Thetis, Thetidis and Thetidos ; fem. *Thetis*, one of the heathen sea-goddesses.
- Thrax, Thracis ; masc. *a Thracian*.
- Tibēris, Tibēris ; masc. *Tiber*, a river in Italy.
- Tiberius, Tiberii ; masc. *Tiberius*, a Roman emperor.

- Timeo, timēre, timui ; neut. and act. *to fear*.  
 Timīdus, timīda, timīdum ; gen. timīdi ; *timid*.  
 Timor, timōris ; masc. *fear*.  
 Tolēro, tolerāre, tolerāvi, tolerātum ; act. *to bear*.  
 Tonītru ; neut. ind. *thunder*.  
 Totus, tota, totum ; gen. totius ; *the whole*. See page 23.  
 Tragedia, tragiœ ; fem. *tragedy*.  
 Tranquillitas, tranquillitātis ; fem. *stillness, tranquillity*.  
 Transeo, transire, transīvi, transitum ; act. *to go, to pass*.  
 Transporto, transportāre, transportāvi, transportātum ; act. *to transport*.  
 Tribuo, tribuēre, tribui, tribūtum ; act. *to give*.  
 Tridens, tridentis ; masc. *a trident*, an instrument with three prongs, the sceptre of the sea-gods.  
 Triumphus, triumphi ; masc. *a triumph*.  
 Troja, Trojæ ; fem. *Troy*, a city in Asia, near the *Ægean sea*, famous for having been besieged ten years by the Greeks.  
 Trojanus, Trojana, Trojanum ; (like bonus ; ) *a Trojan*, or inhabitant of *Troy*.  
 Tu, tui ; *you*. See page 42.  
 Tui ; pron. gen. *of you*. See page 42.  
 Tumulus, tumūli ; masc. *a little hill*. Hence it means *a grave*, as after burial the dirt was thrown up over the body in the shape of a hill.  
 Tunc ; adv. *then, at that time*.  
 Turbo, turbāre, turbāvi, turbātum ; act. *to disturb, to disorder, to throw into confusion*.  
 Turma, turmæ ; fem. *a troop*.  
 Turris, turris ; fem. *a tower*.  
 Tutor, tutāri, tutātus sum ; dep. *to defend*.  
 Tutus, tuta, tutum ; gen. tuti ; *safe*.  
 Tuus, tua, tuum ; gen. tui ; pron. *thy*.  
 Ubertas, ubertātis ; fem. *richness*.  
 Ubi ; adv. *where*.  
 Ubique ; adv. *every where*.  
 Ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum ; dep. *to avenge*.  
 Ullus, ulla, ullum ; gen. ullius ; *any, any one*.  
 Ultimū, ultimā, ultimum ; *farthest* ; comparative, ulterior ; *farther*.



Utra, prep. *beyond*.

Ultro, adv. *willingly, of his own accord*.

Umbra, umbræ; fem. *a shadow*.

Undecentam; adj. ind. *ninety-nine*. Compounded of unus, de, and centum, *one from a hundred*.

Unquam, adv. *at any time, ever*.

Unus, una, unum; gen. unus; *one, some one*.

Urbs, urbis; fem. *a city*.

Uro, urere, usui, ustum; act. *to burn*.

Ursus, ursi; masc. *a bear*.

Urtica, urticæ; fem. *a thorn, a nettle*.

Usus, usus; masc. *use, experience*; also, *necessity, need*.

Ut; conj. *that, as*: when an adv. *how!*

Uterque, utræque, utrumque; gen. utriusque; *both, each*.

Utica, Uticæ; fem. *Utica, a city of Africa*.

Utilis, utilis, utile; gen. utilis; *useful*.

Utinam; adv. of wishing; *O that! would!*

Utor, uti, usus sum; dep. *to use, to have the benefit of*.

Uva, uvæ; fem. *a grape*.

Uxor, uxoris; fem. *a wife*.

Vacuus, vacua, vacuum; gen. vacui; *void of, free from*.

Væ! interj. *alas!*

Valeo, valere, valui, valitum; neut. *to be well*.

Vanitas, vanitatis; fem. *vanity*.

Varietas, varietatis; fem. *a variety*.

Varius, varia, varium; gen. varii; *various*.

Vasto, vastare, vastavi, vastatum; act. *to waste, to destroy*.

Vecordia, vecordiæ; fem. *madness*.

Vehementer; adv. *vehemently, exceedingly*.

Velocitas, velocitatis; fem. *velocity, swiftness*.

Vel; conj. *or, either*.

Velox, velox, velox; gen. veloxis; *swift*.

Veluti; adv. *even as*.

Venator, venatoris; masc. *a hunter*.

Vendo, vendere, vendidi, venditum; act. *to sell*.

Veneo, venire, veni; (no supine;) neut. *to be sold*.

Venia, veniæ; fem. *pardon*.

Venio, venire, veni, ventum; neut. *to come*.

Ventus, venti ; masc. *the wind*.

Verber, verbēris ; neut. *a lash, a stroke, a stripe*.

Verbum, verbi ; neut. *a word*.

Verè ; adv. *truly*.

Vergo, vergēre ; (no perfect nor supine;) neut. *to incline, to bend to*.

Veritas, veritātis ; fem. *truth*.

Vero ; conj. *truly, indeed*.

Verres, Verris ; masc. *Verres*, a Roman prætor in Sicily, whom Cicero accused of peculation.

Versus ; prep. *towards*.

Verto, vertēre, verti, versum ; act. *to turn*.

Verus, vera, verum ; gen. veri ; *true*.

Vescor, vasci ; no perfect or participle ; dep. *to feed*.

Vestor, vestra, vestrum ; gen. vestri ; *your*.

Vestio, vestire, vestivi, vestitum ; act. *to clothe*.

Vestis, vestis ; fem. *a garment*.

Vetus, vetus, vetus ; gen. vetēris ; *ancient*.

Via, viæ ; fem. *a way*.

Vicinus, vicini ; masc. *a neighbour*.

Video, vidēre, vidi, visum ; act. *to see*.

Vigīlo, vigilāre, vigilāvi, vigilātum ; act. *to watch*.

Viginti ; adj. ind. *twenty*.

Villa, villæ ; fem. *a villa or cottage*.

Vincio, vincire, vinxi, vinctum ; act. *to bind*.

Vinco, vincere, vici, victum ; act. *to conquer*.

Vinculum, vinculi ; neut. *a chain*.

Violo, violāre, violāvi, violātum ; act. *to force, to violate*.

Vir, viri ; masc. *a man*.

Virgilius, Virgilii ; *Virgil*, the greatest of the Latin poets.

Viridis, viridis, viride ; gen. viridis ; *green*.

Virtus, virtutis ; fem. *virtue, valour*.

Vis ; gen. vis ; acc. vim ; voc. vis ; abl. vi ; fem. *strength, power*.

In the singular it has but these five cases ; in the plural it is regular ;  
vires, virium, viribus, &c.

Visus, visus ; masc. *sight*.

Vita, vitæ ; fem. *life*.

Vitiōsus, vitiōsa, vitiōsum ; (like bonus ;) *bad, vicious*.

Vitis, vitis ; fem. *a vine*.

Vitium, vitii ; neut. *vice, a crime.*

Vito, vitare, vitavi, vitatum ; act. *to avoid, to shun.*

Vivo, vivere, vixi, victum ; neut. *to live, to have life.*

Voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatum ; act. *to call, to summon.*

Volo, volare, volavi, volatum ; neut. *to fly.*

Volo, velle, volui ; (no supine ; ) irreg. *to wish, to be willing.* The participle, volens, is often used adverbially, *willingly.*

Ind. pres. {	Sing. volo,	<i>I wish ;</i>	Plur. volumus,	<i>we wish ;</i>
	vis,	<i>thou wishest ;</i>	vultis,	<i>you wish ;</i>
	vult,	<i>he wishes ;</i>	volunt,	<i>they wish.</i>

Voluntas, voluntatis ; fem. *the will, the pleasure.*

Voluptas, voluptatis ; fem. *pleasure.*

Vox, vocis ; fem. *a voice.*

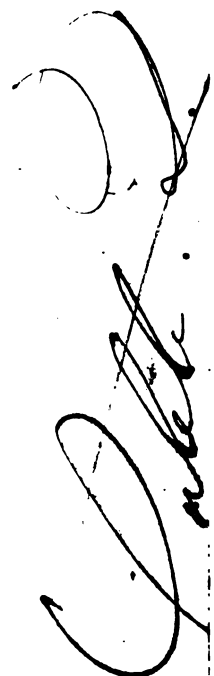
Vulnĕro, vulnerare, vulneravi, vulneratum ; act. *to wound*

Vulnus, vulneris ; neut. *a wound.*

Vultus, vultus ; masc. *the countenance.*

Xantippe, Xantippes ; fem. 1st. declension ; *Xantippe, the wife of Socrates.*

*[Handwritten signature]*



**JANUARY 25, 1924**

22

